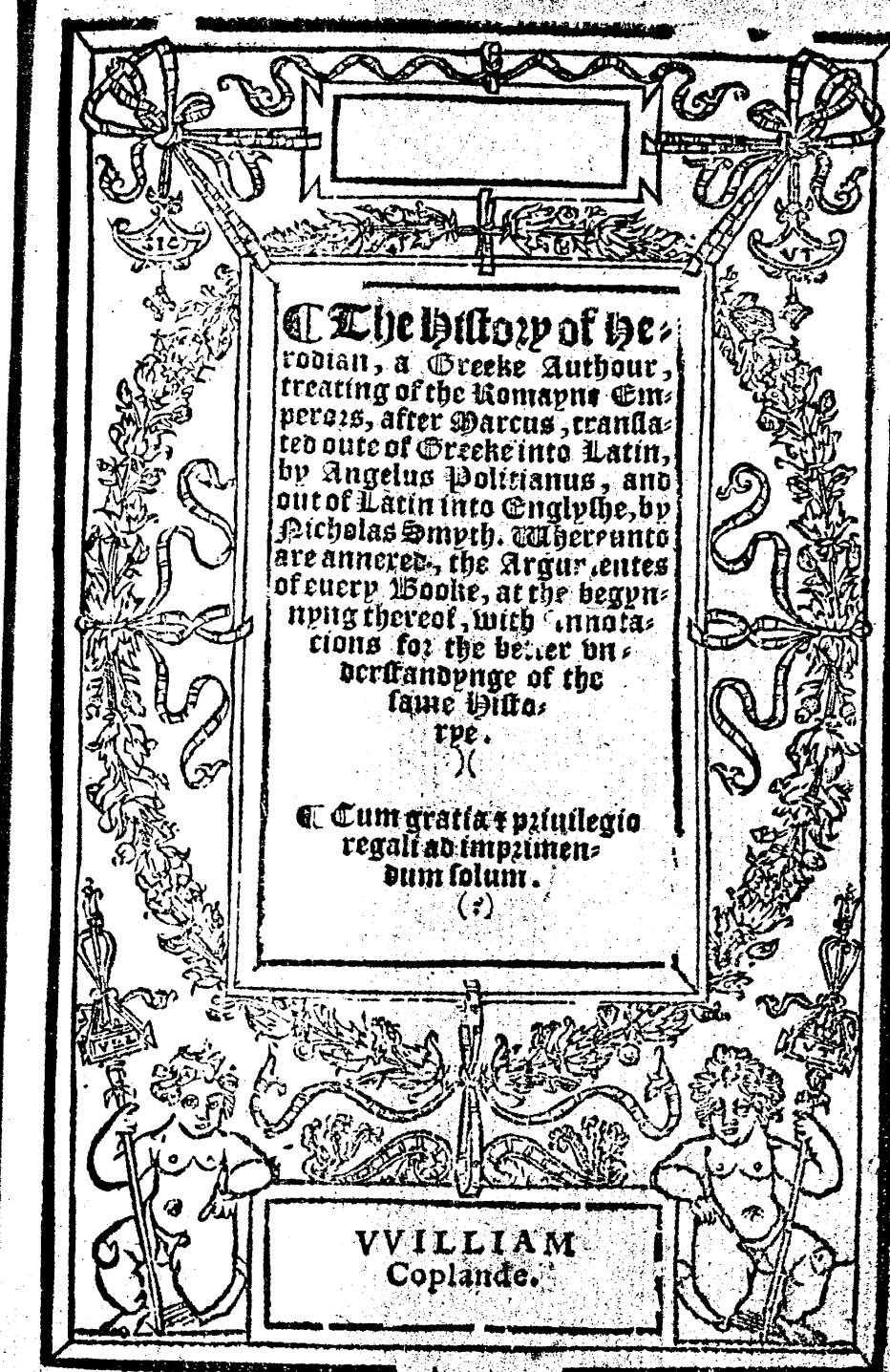


Perfect

1 2 3 4 5  
BRITISH MUSEUM 1 2



To the ryghte honorable Lord, Willm  
Earle of Penbroke, &c. Lorde President of the Kyng  
and Queenes Maesties Counsayle, in the Mar-  
ches of Wales, and one of theyr Maesties most  
honorable preue Counsallie, his humble D<sup>r</sup>  
tour Psycholas Smyth, wryteth all  
thynges prosper-  
rous.



Mongest all those, that haue by  
theyr wrytynge, beautifyed the  
Greke & Latyn tonge, none are  
supposed (right honozable & ver-  
tuous Lord) so much to haue pro-  
ficed mortall affaires, as Histori-  
ographers, who haue faychfully  
reduced into wryting the actes &  
deades of such, as in fame (either  
good or euill) haue passed thys  
transitorye lyfe. They haue put before our eyes, the ly-  
ues, maners, and doinges, of all sortes of men, w<sup>t</sup> theyr  
counSELLES, fortunes, and aduentures, the whiche theyr  
postericie maye, as in a paynted Table beholde: and  
therby learne to profyte, as wel the Common wealthe,  
as their owne priuate estat. Chieflye, through the ma-  
nyfold examples, bothe good, and euill, conteyned in  
Histories, all sortes of people may attayne by them, to  
more knowledge in shorte space, then otherwyse they  
micht in al theyr lives, if y<sup>e</sup> same were much lōger then  
the commō age of man. For prole wherof, we haue the  
memorie of Lucius Lucullus the noble Romaine: who  
(as Cicero wryteth) at his deperature frō Rome against  
the great kyng Mythridates, being utterly unskylfull  
in warfare, whyles he sayled on the sea, so trauyaled,  
in conferring wryt learned men, and reading of Histoi-  
ries, that when he arriued in Asie, he was so excellente  
in warlyke knowledge, that by the confession of My-  
thridates, he deserued preferment aboue all the Chiefe-  
men in warre, that were before his tyme. Alexander  
Seuerus also, Emperour of Rome, when so euer he



Made preparation to warre, accustomed to consulte w  
such as were expert in Histories. And good cause why.  
For yf Use(as layeth Afranius) hath engendred wyle,  
dome:and Memorye as the Moother, hath brought her  
into lyghte: Who oughte to be more sage, and discrete,  
then they whiche reteyn in memorie, the deades, & ma-  
nners, not only of one age, or Cittie, but of al ages, & naci-  
ons? Thys much considerynge (ryght excellent Lorde)  
and enduced by the prudente wordes of Salust, in his  
Preface to Catilines wonderfull Coniuracion, wher-  
by he exhorteth man (yf he entende to be reputed wox,  
thver then other mortall Creatures) so to employe his  
whole labour, and studye, that he ouerlyp not hys lyfe,  
in slouthful silence, as sauage, and brute beastes, whom  
Nature hath sounmed prone, & subiect, to hys filchie lustes  
of the bealy: I haue enterpryzed to tralate out of Latyn  
this presente Historie of Herodian, a Greke Authour,  
treating of the Romayn Emperours, betwene Marcus  
the Philosopher, and Gordianus the yonger, not be-  
fo're (I thynke) brought into oure Englyshe conge. And  
haue presumed, to dedicat y same unto your good Lord-  
shyp, whome not onely fame, but also experiance, doeth  
apparauntly proue, to be the perfect Patronne of knyght-  
lye prowes, and vertue. Humbly beschyng your good  
Lordshyp, of your accustomed clemencie, so to acrpte  
thys my symple gift, beying the Cropp of my barreyne  
Baruest, as may emboden other joyfullye to embrace  
it, and encourage me, to employe my poore labour fur-  
ther hereafter. And so I remayne a continuall Inter-  
cessor to almyghtye God, for the prosperous estate  
of youre Lordshyppe, wth contynuall  
increas of vertue, and  
honour.

THE PROHEME OR  
the historie of Herodian, trea-  
sing of the Romayne Em-  
perours, after  
Marcus.



They whiche haue deluynered vnto  
theyz posterite auncient tradicions, and endeavord to renewe by  
writynge the olde memorie of hystories: They I saye, earnestly  
affecting the renowme of erudition and learning: and busilye stir-  
dyng to preserue their names  
from thinaturie of obliuion, did employ moche lesse  
laboure in searching oute the truthe, then in trim-  
myng the stile of their Hystories. Knowinge pre-  
cisely, that althoughe they falsifyed any thing longe  
before theyz time passed, the same coulde not be repre-  
hendid, and yet neuertheles them selfes hold (through  
the pleasaunt eloquence, of their finely penned talke)  
obtayne very muche commoditie, of their paynesfull  
trauayle. Other soms beying moued, with periculer  
enmityes and hatred of Tyranttes, or elles fallen in-  
to unmeasurable slaterye, with praysing of Princes,  
Cyties, & priuate persons, dyd through lkyfull know-  
ledge of wryting, blase and extoll farre aboue truthe,  
thinges that by them selues were symple & of no eli-  
macion. But I in contrarie wyle, haue enterpryzed  
to wryte an historie, not receued of others, unkno-  
wen, or elles wanting witnessesse, but at this present,  
fixed and remaining in the memories of the Readers,  
and collected with singuler truthe and diligence.  
Trusyng, that the knowledge of thole thinges, (be-  
ing many and great, and not longe agone happened)  
wyll not be unpleasaunt to the posterite. For yf a man  
wyll well ponder al the ages synce the time of Augus-  
tus, (when the Romayne superioritie was commy-  
ted to the arbitrement of one man) he shall not fynde  
in all those ii. c. yeres (so many almost perdyre recke-  
nes)

### The proheme.

fed betwene Augustus, and Marcus) so duers suc-  
cessions in thempire, so variable chaunces and happenes  
in the warres either Ciuyle or foreyn, so manie naci-  
ons raised vp, so many of our owne and barbarous  
Cities destroyed, belides earthquakes and plagues,  
the lves also of Princes, and Tyrants so straunge  
and incredible, that none oz at the leſt berie ſew like  
examples can be founde amoungs our elders. Of whiche  
princes, ſome of longe tyne remayned in autho-  
ritie, other ſome a ſhorte while enjoyed the deminion  
pea many of them ſcarcelie entered into honour, and  
being onlie named Emperours, lost thempire the ve-  
rie same daye they tooke it vpon them. And when by  
the ſpace of. ix. yeres, the Cittie of Rome had ſuſtained  
more gouernours then for the time ſuſſiced, it came to  
paſſe, that many ſtraunge thinges and worthy admi-  
raſion chaunced. For the Princes ſomewhat ſtriken  
in age, as men expert in ſundry affayres, diſpu-  
dently gouerne themſelues and their charge.

On the other ſide the yonge men ledinge their  
lives in voluptuousnes, inuented and com-  
maunded new thinges parly. wherbie it  
happened, that the yonge princes, be-  
inge of vnlky age and licence, diſalſo  
folow vnlky ſtudie & maſters. How  
these thinges were done, in obſer-  
ving a iulf order of the crew  
yne and prynes, we will  
now declare.

(\*\*\*)



### C The contentes of the fyſte booke.



He Author beginneth his hiftorys  
at the ende of Marcus Antoninus  
reigne, who was ſuccellor vnto An-  
reliuſ Antoninus ſurnamed Pius:  
And it behoueth to know, that after  
y opinio of Eusebius in his tables,  
Marcus Antoninus was the. viii.  
Emperour of Rome. But after the  
opinion of other Historiographers, he was the. xvii.  
The fyſt was Julius Cesar. The ſeconde Octauius  
Cesar, Augustus. The thirde Tiberius Cesar. The  
iii. Caius Caligula. The. v. Claudius Cesar. The. vi.  
Nero Claudioſ Cesar. The. vii. Sergius Galba.  
The. viii. Otho Siluius. The. ix. Aulus Vitellius.  
The. x. Flauius Vespasianus. The. xi. Titus Vespasianus.  
The twelve Domitianus. Of whiche twelue  
Huetonius Tranquillus hathe wryten compendiouſlye.  
Paulus Molius ſayeth, that Perua ſucceeded  
Domitian, after Perua Traian, after Traian,  
Adrian, after Adrian Antoninus Pius, wyth hys  
two Sonnes Aurelius, and Luctius, whome Marcus  
Antonius Verus, and Aurelius Commodoſ, his bro-  
ther ſucceeded. Which Marcus Antonius (of whome  
presently the queſtion is) ouerliued the other, and re-  
mained ſole Emperour beynge the. xvii. in nombre, ree-  
keing Julius Cesar for the fyſte. Of the lignage,  
vertue, ſcience, and deceaſe, of this Marcus, Hero-  
dian ſpeaketh in the begynnynge of this fyſte booke:  
after whome his Sonne Commodoſ, raigned: beynge  
in the beginning, gentle, meeke, and of good diſpoli-  
cion. But after he had escaped the Treſon of Luci-  
la his owne Syſter, Perenues the Capitayne of his  
garde, Maſternus, and Cleander the liuetenaunte  
of his armie, he altered to diſolute and diſhonest lyfe,  
and Tyrannie. Wherefore he was poſſoned by Mar-  
tia one of his Cœcubones, Letus the Capitaine of hys  
Garde, & Electus his principall Thāberlaine: And af-  
ter at their appayntment, ſtrangled by Marcius.

F I P I D.

**C** The fyfte booke  
of the historie of  
Herodian.



Hemperour Marcus had The chil  
many daughters, and ii. derne of  
sonnes onely, of whome Marcus,  
the yonger named Meric. Merilli-  
mus, by myschaunce di- mus,  
ed in his tender age. The  
other named Commodus, Commo-  
dus, the fater broughte vp w dus.  
great diligence and care.  
And havyng gotten from  
all partes excellente lear-  
ned men, waged the with

large stipendes, that they shoulde every man for hys  
parte, garnyssh the maners and disposition of hys  
Sonne. He marayd his daughters at their ryte age,  
vnto the best of the Senatours, choosyng to his Son-  
nes in lawe, not such as coulde shew furthe large pe-  
degrues of their auncestrie, or such as baunted them  
selues of their great treasoure, but those which excel-  
led in perfecte modellie of maners, and Innocencis  
of lyfe. For that he esteemed, to be the onely, perfecte,  
and stably, rychesse of the mynde.

He forgate no vertue, wherin he exercised not hym The good  
selfe: beynge so studious of the antiquite of learning, dispositi-  
on in the same, he might be compared, to the best ey- on of  
ther of the Greekes, or of the Romaynes. For profe Marcus,  
hereof, there are many thinges bothe spoken, and wri-  
ten, by hym, commen even vnto our tyme. He was so  
curteis, that he wold gently take every commer vnto  
him by the hande: not permitting, that any man  
shouide be forbidden by his garde, the appzoching vnto  
his person. And he onely, amonges all the Empe-  
rours, vsed the study of Sapience, not in woordes, or  
knowledge of decrees, but in grauitie of maners, and  
continencie of lyfe. Ultherby it came to passe, that the  
same age and tyme, brought furthe a great encrease of  
wyse men, for comuneley, men are wout to folowe  
the

### The historie of Herodian

the lynes and maners of their prynces. But now, as touching the notable actes by hym done, aswell at Rome, as elles where, how he behaued hym selfe also, towardes the Barbarous nacions enhabytinge the Casse, and the Northe, the same are contayned in the monumentes of many excellent learned men. Bue those thinges, whiche (after the death of Marcus, by all ages.) I bothe sawe and harde, (whereof many by exerience my selfe knewe, as one trased in common affayres, and prynces businelle) I haue taken vpon me to wryte.

Pan-  
nonie.

Adoles-  
cence.

Dionis-  
sius.

Ptolo-  
menus.

Antigo-  
nus.

Bacchus

**C**Whyles the olde Emperour Marcus soioured a-  
miges the Pannoniens, a very greevous disease came  
vpon hym, not onely wozne wyth age, but also sore  
broken wyth continuall trauaile and care. Wherefore,  
when he perceyued no remedy but death, he begaunce  
greatly to doubt in hym selfe, lest hys Sonne, (who  
was but then entered the fyfth yeres of his Adolescen-  
cie) eyther throughe behemencie of hys youthe, or el-  
les throughe an inordynate lycence, whiche he shoulde  
haue after hys fathers deathe, leuyng all good exer-  
cise, and stody aparte, wold addycte him selfe to drons-  
kennesse, and superfluous riot. For he knewe well,  
that the myndes of yonge men, easilly declyne to im-  
moderate superfluytie, from laudable and honest dys-  
ciplyn. He was troubled belydes, wthy the memory  
of many prynces, whiche being but yonge men, tooke  
vpon them the gouernance of royaumes: as well of  
Dionisius the Tyrant of Sicile, (whose intempe-  
rateies of lyfe was so great, that he endowed with ri-  
chess rewardes, thiauentours of newe pleasures: as  
also of them whiche succeeded Alexander, of Mace-  
donie: who dyd so shamefullye and Tiranouslye  
raygne, that they purchased to hys kyngedome, a no-  
torious obloquy. For Ptolenens, fell into so detrac-  
table lyfe, that contrarve to the lawes of the Mace-  
doniens, and all the Greekes, he was entangled, with  
tharest mariage of hys owne Syster. Antonus al-  
so, (to represent the G D Bacchus) was wonte,  
In steade of the Macedonien Diademme and crowne

to

### The fyfthe booke.

Fol. ii.

to were a Garlande of ynis, and for a sceptre, to carye  
a thystell. The olde man was verid belydes, wthy  
late examples, as of Nero, whos abstayned not from  
the murdering of hys owne moother, and made hym  
selfe as a laughyng stocke, vnto all the people. He  
remembred Domitian, who leste iouchyng vn-  
done that he thoughte to appertayne vnto extreme Domitia  
Crueltye. Wherefore, wapeng wthy hym selfe  
thiese ymagis of tyrannye, he was tolled betwene  
hope and feare. The nygh racion of the Germay-  
nes, encreased also hys perplexite: for he hadde not  
throughly broughte them in subiection, but some  
he had taken into hys frenchedyppre, and the rest, he  
had vanquylshed by force of batayle. Many of the  
same were escaped, and hydse them selues, for feare  
of the prynce. Wherefore he doubted greatly leaste  
after hys deathe, they woulde rebelle agayne, in set-  
tyng at noughe the youthe of hys Sonne: for he  
knewe, the nature of the barbarous people, was to  
be stirred wthy euery small tryfle. Beynge tur-  
mented wthy thiese troublome waues of care, he  
caused as manys hys friendes, and kyndmen as were  
then in his company to repayre vnto his presence, and  
at theyr commynge togythers, hauyng commaunded  
hyg Sonne to stande before them, helysted hym selfe  
somewhat vpon hys pylowe, and made this oration  
vnto them.

**I**t is not to be meruayled at, that you are sorow The orat  
full and penysfe, beholding me in this plighe: for it is clow of  
the nature of man, to bewaile the misfortune of other, Marcus.  
And those thinges we see with our eyes, doo pouoke vpon hys  
muche more compassion and pitie. Belydes this my death bed  
reason is communie with you: for in the recompence  
of the good wyll I haue heretofoze borne you, I hope  
and as of duty lode for a mutuall benevolence at your  
handes. And at this presente it is so happened, that I  
must make profe, whether I haue in dayne so longe to  
fore erbybites honour vnto you, (having you alway-  
es in estimacion) and emploied all my diligent studie  
towarde your welthe: And you in recompencing the  
ame

ame

## The Historie of Herodian

came to shewe your selues not hymynedfull of the benesytes you haue receyued: ye see my son whom your selues haue nourished, entering nowe the first boundes of his youthe. And (as it were) in the swoolwe and waues of inc; tall lyfe, wating gouernours: lest ythrough ignorance, beyng drawn from his ryghte course, he acquaynteth himselfe with disorderded exerclyses. Be you therfore, (for me but one) many fathers vnto hym, in garnyshing his maner, wthy prompting, and minyfiring holosome preceptes vnto hym: for, neyther maye the aboundinge of treasour, satisfie the sensual lustes of tyrannys, neyther can the Emperoure, be assured by defended by the bande of his garde, envyroning hys person, except, he haue the good willes of those whom he governeth. Soz euermore they raigne longe, and peaceably; by whom no feare through cruelty, but loue through gentlenes, is powred into the hartes of the Citzynys: neyther they whome force constrainneth, but those which of their free bylles obey, are either in doing or suffering, exempt fro all suspicio of slaterie. The same do not at any tyme, (except they be outrageously handeled) grudge, or impugne, the rule of their superiours. But it is very harde for a man, which lyueth in most inordinate licence, to gouerne him self, and bridle his affections. Wherefore, ys ye wilbe Authours of well lyning vnto him, and oftentimes admonythe him of those thinges he presently heareth, ye shal with that one labour, bothe make hym a good prynce vnto your selfes, and all other, and also deserue the participation of our memorie, whiche with this one poynct ye maye make immortall. Whyles themperour Marcus was speaking thiese wordes, his vitall spycie began so soodeinly to fayle, that furthwyth, he was enforced to cease his talke, and syde downe into his bed agayne. Then so greate compassion, perced the heartes of all that were present, that many of them, beyng through sorrowe almost bereft their ryght sensess, rayled a dolorouse clamour. He hauyng languished, onely a day and a nyght after ended hys lyfe: leuynge behinde hym, greate wante, and desyre, of hym selfe, vnto men of

that

## The fyrste booke.

Fol. III.

that age, & vnto their posterite, a perpetuall renowne of vertue. When the lame of his death, was spreadd abroad, an incredible lamentacion was, aswel amon gell the hole armee selfe, as the common people: So that no man within the Romaine dominion, received this message, without abundaunt heading of teares. And bewayleng the losse of him, w one accord, some called hym a good fathir, other some a bening Emperour, Certayne a moost valyaunt Capitayne, and many a ryghtesus and moderate prynce: And truely, there was nons of them deceyued. Nowe after a fewe dayes passed, when the funerall obsequies were performed, it seemed good vnto his frendes, to byng the yonge Emperour vnto the army, that he myght, both speake vnto the souldiours, and (as the usage of newe Emperours is) in distributyng of money largely amongest them establishe theyr myndes, (as it wer by obligacion) vnto him. It was therfore commauded, that the souldiours, accordyng to the olde custome, shoulde repaire togithers in the field: After whose alembly, Themperour Commodus came farthe, and hauing finyshed the diuine ceremonys, ascended them periall throne, (for the same purpose) in the nyddes of the campe erected: Where having about hym his fathers frendes, (who were many excellent lerned men) he spake these wordes, or muche lyke that ensue.

I am fully perswaded, that the dothur of this calamite, is comon to me with you: And that you are cion of no lesse sorowfull, then my selfe. For during my fathers lyfe, I never behaued my selfe as superiour vnto you, for that he loued vs all equally, and dyd more willingly call me companion, then Sonne: because he esteemed the one, to be a name of nature, and the other, he reckened to be the participacio of vertue. And often times, he caried me in his armes, whiles I was an infante, deluynered me into your handes, and (as I might saye) gaue me wholy vnto your custodie, and deluyte. Wherefore, I doubt not, but that ye wyll exhibyte vnto me your fauour, for myne eldes, oughte to repute me as their sonne: and myne equalles in age, I

C.j.

mays

### The historie of Herodian

may suffly call compaysons in armes: for even so,  
dyd my father done vs all as one, & prouyded to have  
vs enstruced in all erercyces of vertue and leatryng.  
Nowe after hym, hath fortune gyuen vs for a prince  
vnto you: not a straunger, as some hath bene before  
me, nor one whiche dauneth hym selfe of a conque-  
red Empyre: but I was onelye borne vnto you, and  
brought vp in the verye Imperiall Palayce: And as  
soone as I was out of my mootheres wombe, thynge-  
xall purple receyued me, in so muche that I was no  
sooner a man, then a Prince. Wonderynge therefore  
these thynges in your myndes, loue & embrase your  
ryghtful Emperour, not gyuen, but borne vnto you.  
If so my father is taken vp into the heauens, & made  
companyon wylle the Goddes: And vntoo vs, the re-  
gymente of the earthe, and gouernaunce of mortall  
causes doo appertayne. What successe and effect they  
shall come vnto, it resteth in youre power: If ye wyll  
therefore, valdauntly fynishe the resyue of the war-  
res, and enlarge the Romayne Empyre, vnto y great  
Ocean: ye shal not onely purchase vnto your selues,  
exeadynge muche glorie: but also, duely requyte, the  
memorye of our commune parente. And belue ver-  
ely, that he nowe heareth vs, and presently beholdeth  
what we doo: And let vs accompte our selues mooste  
happye, for that we haue suche a witnessse of our good  
dedes. As for the actes, ye haue vnto thys daye, val-  
auntly and prosperously atcheued, are attrayuted vnto  
ys prudente gouernaunce: But what you shall  
hereafter notablye bryng to effecte wylle me, that is  
to saye, wylle a yonge man your Emperour, the same  
shall swyne vntoo youre selues, as it were, a pe-  
culier lame, as well of truthe, as of prowesse: Whereby  
ye shall bryng myne age in more esymacyon, wylle  
executing boldely ure assayres. And the Barbarous  
people, being in the begynnyng of thys newe pryn-  
cypalitee throughlye represed, wyll not hereafter o-  
uer boldelye aduaunce them selfes, in despysyng my  
youthe: but being ones taught by theyz owne peryls,  
wyll be restrayned and kepte vnder, wylle contynuall  
awe

### The firste booke.

Fol. iii.

awe and feare. When he had thus muche spoken, he  
dystrybuted amonges the Souldours, a greate sum-  
me of money, (that he myghte thereby confyzme their  
heartes faythefull, and louyng towarde hym) and  
then retourned into hys Palayce. By a lytle space af-  
ter tyme, all thynges were tyed by hys fathers fren-  
des, who were at his tyme absente wylle theyz prudet  
counsayle, gyving hym as muche lybertie withall, as  
they thoughte suffycyent, for the preseruacion of his  
healthe. But anone after, certayne of the imperours  
housholde crepte by lytte and lytte forwarde, ompt-  
tyng nothyng vndone, that myghte corrupte the  
good dyspolycyon of the yonge Emperoure. For the  
table parasytes, who measured felicite by theyz beli-  
es, and sylthye lustes, entourmed hym often tymes of  
the Cytie pleasures, nowe, recytyng those thynges  
whiche were delectable too be hearde, or seene there.  
And then ertollynge wylle prapse, the abundaunce of  
all thynges. They dysplayed besydes the bankes of  
Histria, as bisproffable at all seasons, for y it had no  
pleasaunt apple trees, or other fruite, & was enuyronned  
wylle contynual colde & cloudes. Whyle thou never, O  
Emperour (sayde they) leaue dyngynge of water dig-  
ged, & congeled togidher as yle. Whal other mi enioye  
the clere well springes, the pleasaunt colde of the run-  
nyng ryuers, and the holome ayre of Italye? By  
these alluraynges to wantonnesse, they easlye endam-  
med the yonge mans mynde wylle beverente desyre  
of thole pleasures. Wherfore furthwylle hauyng cal-  
led hys frendes togidher, he dysmyuled not, that he  
was verye desyrous of hys natyue countrey: But yet  
fearynge to declare, the very cause of hys sodayn alte-  
racyon of mynde, he sayned that he stode in greate  
doubte, leasse any ryche manne of the nobyltrie,  
woulde take possesyon, of the Imperiall Palayce:  
And therupon gatheryng vntoo hym a greate po-  
wer of me, would, as oute of y strongest fortresse, cha-  
lenge vntoo hym selfe the princypall domynyon of all  
the pyre. For sayd he amonges the people, may easly  
be leuied a mighty & approued copany of yonge men.

The ta-  
ble of pa-  
casites.

Histria.

G. ii.

Glymes

## The historie of Herodian

Whiles he thiese causes moued, (all the rest, hauing their eyes calle upon the earth, with spilt and sorrowfull countenaunce) Pompeianus, (who in age was the moost auncient, and had maried Comodous eldest syster) arose vp and sayd. It is no meruayle, o Sonne and soueraigne, that you are holden wth desyre of your countrey, for the very same desyre of leving oure housholdes, dothe vige and sturre vs also. But we represse that affection, for that chaffaires we haue here in hande, requyze the syngle parte, and lyeth vs more upon to dispatche. As for the pleasures of the Cittye, you shall longer enioye hereafter: And ROME is continually, where the Emperour sojourneth. Nowe to gyue ouer the warre lately begonne, besydes that it is shamefull, it is also very perillous: for thereby we minister occasion of audaciee, vnto the Barbarous people: who wyll thinke, that we are not departed for cause of recreacio, but that we are fledde being daunted with feare. And vnto your selfe, howe glorioouse wyll it be, after ye haue vanquished all your enemies, and enlarged the boundes of your Empyre vnto the ocean, to retorne to ROME wth triumphe, and therin, to haue ledde bounde as capuyers, the barbarous kynges and Lordes: for truly after this sorte, in the former worldes, did the Romaynes, were noble and famousse. There is no cause, wher you shoulde feare that your assayres in the city, are in any hazard. For every principall senatour is here present wth you, and the hole army, doth before your eyes defende your Empire: yea, and all your chiefest Treasoure, is with vs also. The memorie besides of your father, hath established a stedfast and perfecte benevolence towardes you, with all estates: When Pompeianus perswading hym to the better, had thus muche spoken, he did somewhat at that present, represse the wyll and endearour of the younge Emperour: who scaryng the olde mans saynges, hauing nothing wherwith he myght well replye, dismyssed the counsayle: promisynge, that he would more diligently at leysure, debate with hym selfe those thinges. Yet afterwarde (hys seruautes and

## The fyfthe booke

Fol. v.

and parasites callynge moste iniuriously vpon hym) he made no further relation vnto hys Counsayles. But hauyng sent his letters vnto Adrie, and appoynted whom he thought meete, to defende the banckes of Hister, and restringe the attempts of the Barbarous: he caused furthwith his tentowring to be proclaymed. Thel that were left behinde, diligentlie exectuted the offices appoynted them, and wþthin a lytle space, broughte many in subiection. And some they topned by great gyftes in frenchedhyp vnto them. The whiche was not verye harde to doe: For the Barbarous people beying naturally greater of minuty, and despiters of all daunger, doþ ther gone wth thung wþch invasions, and pyleting of their neighbourours, or elles for an appoynted salarie, sell their services. The whiche thing Commodus perceiving, that he myght with money wherof he has innumerable abundaunce, purchase hym selfe securitee, and quicke he deuided new thing vnto the demanders. Now asone as the fame of hys setting forwarde was spreide in the armes, I dauly a greate sturre was amonges all the Soldiours, every man desyring to retorne vnto ROME, and affecting the pleasures of the citye, to leue theperene mynes countrey. And when it was blissem abonde, by reporte of pursuauantes and postes, that the Emperour was retournynge to the Citye, an incredibledore wandered amonges the common people, ebery man conceyng in hym selfe, a singuler hope of the perouers presence, and trulling allredy that he wold folowe his fathars steppes. Hym selfe making speade in hys journey, and passyng wþth a certayne seruante of youthe, in his chariot throughe the myddes of all the cities, was received with princely reverence and large assemblies of the people, & welcomed, as one most acceptable, and wþshed for vnto them. And when he apporched nigh vnto ROME, the hole Senate, and the Romayne commons, (eche of them conveyning to prevent other) crowned wþch lawells, and eatynge all synde of flowers, (that the present season of the yere wþd minister) met as farre as they coulde from the ci-

C. 19. tyc

The Historie of Herodian

the no-  
bility of brythe. For truly, they loued him with most  
fervent affection, beryng borne and brought by amon-  
g them, and then possesynge in the thirde degree  
bilitie of thauyppre and regimenter of Rome. For of his fathers  
Coniuius syde he wised from the chayef of the Senatours. And  
dus.

Fausi-  
modus  
of Antoninus. Mius.  
Com  
dian dyd referra the Pedegree of her kyndred, unto  
Traian her grete graundfather. Of this parentage  
mother. was Commodus descended vnto whome, heydeth the  
Antoni-  
us pries.  
Hadrian  
Traian.  
The be-  
autie of  
Commo-  
dus.

had  
conta-  
in-  
tine  
pleas-  
ant  
and shun-  
ing beautes in hys  
eyes, and a yellow and curled heare, whiche when he  
came into the Sonne, dyd so glyster, that manye dea-  
med the same, as he passed by them, to be sprinkled o-  
uer wþ golden duste. Many also esteemed it a token  
of diuinitate, conjecturing that the capes about the top  
of his heade, were by generacion and nature gwyn-  
nat hym. The softe heare belydes sprange oute of  
hys cheekes, and couered them as it were with flow-  
ers. They receyued therfore this such an Emperour,  
wþtayfull shawtes, and trawling of Garlandes,  
and flowers in the way as he passed. After he was en-  
teryd into the Citie, visyted and saluted the Temples,  
fynde of Jupiter, and then of the other Goddes, and  
gwyn thankes to the hole Senate, and the Pretorian  
Souldiours, for their dedice obserued towards hym,  
he went into thimperiall palacie. For a lewe peres  
after this, he dyd honourably entrete his fathars fren-  
des, and dyed their counseil in all his assayres. Thole  
peres empred he comyted the charge of the hole Em-  
pyre vnto other, & colousted Capitaine of his garde,

Bertines an Italan named Herenes a man verie experte and  
sylfull in warfare. The same, abusyng the age of the  
yonke Emperour, permittyd hym to be corrupted w-  
sensuallites and ruffians. And takyng upon hym  
selfe all charge and labour, ruled the hole Empyre.  
There was in the man, an insatiable thralle of me-

The fyfe booke.

Fol.vi.

ney, so that lycle regarding what he had alreadyn geyt,  
he dayly greedily gayed for newe, wþoute any paynel-  
bourynge earnestly to oppresse his countraymen, yf fren-  
des of Commodus fader, and so paynge every noble  
and ryche man in suspition, that therby, the yonge  
man, beryng put in feare, and they destroyed, hymself  
myght haue opportunitie and power, to causake theys  
goodes and possessions. But yet a wþple, parcell the  
memorye of his fader, and parcell the reverence of  
hys frendes, dyd restrayne Commodus. And after-  
wardes a certayne enuyous fyrone, susperced hys  
disposition, beryng as yet good and moderate, so thys  
it chappened. Lucilla was eldest syster vnto Com-  
modus. She was syde maried vnto the Emperour Commo-  
datus Verus, whome Marcus had alleciated as his  
felowe in thempire. And by geyng hym his daughter dest Si-  
in Marriage, bounde hym wþ an insollable knyt of ffer.  
frendeshippe wþto hym. But after that Lucilla was Lucius  
deade, (the habites and tokens of dignyte, remayning Verus.  
as yet vnto Lucilla) her fader maried her vnto Pomi-  
peianus. And Commodus neuerthelis se permytted  
her to enioye her former estate and honour. For he  
suffered her to sytte in thempirell seate in the Thea-  
tre, and to haue the fyre borne before her, as the au-  
ciente blage was. But after Commodus had marped  
Cryspina, and that it was expediente, to gyve the  
fyste place vnto the Emperours wyfe, Lucilla grud-  
ged therreat wonderfullpe, reckemyng the others ho-  
nour, to be her reproche, but yet knowynge, that her  
husbande Pompeianus, entierly loued Commodus,  
she durske not ones make any motion vnto hym, of in-  
uadynge Thempyre. Wherfore haþynge syoued  
the mynde of one Quadratus, a verye noble and Quadra-  
ryche yonge man, (wyth whome also it was thought tis.  
she had commycted aduoutrie) she dyd so greuoudre  
complayne vnto hym of thimurpe she had receyved,  
that she enduced the yonge man, mosse perniciously  
to consent, to the vtre vndoing of hym selfe and the  
hole Senate.

C. lxx.

302

## The Historie of Herodian

**Mutina  
nus.**

**Amphi-  
theatre.**

**Therac-  
tion of  
verenes.  
Lucilla  
and her  
cōplices  
put to  
death.**

For amonges all other of the oder of Senatours whi  
the conlyzed wyp him in this recerable enterpryse,  
he aduised unto him a certayne yonge man named  
Muntianus, of a yonge minde, and loue to make,  
whome he perswased to hide a dagger in his bosome,  
watche for convenient opportunitie and place; & there  
with a loderne assailee Iea Commodus: As for the  
rest in distributing of money, Lucilla promised to see  
Vito Muntianus thereto, standing in the entreye of  
the Amphitheatre, (so he trusted in that darke place  
to be well hidden) forth with drewe ouer the dagger,  
and kryed wych a lounde voyce unto Commodus, say-  
inge: This dothe the Senate sende unto thee. Whiles  
he spake thise wordes, he was apprehended by them-  
perours Garde, and receyued comigne punyshment  
for his madnes: beynge by his owne sondres, the Aug-  
hout of thelschewyng hys myghte, his ement being  
rather opened then accomplayshed. This too was the  
fynde and chiesest occasion of Commodus hatred a-  
gainst the Senate. For thise wordes had so perced  
hys heart, that he reputed them all his enemys, the  
voyce of the yonge man, which wold haue slaine him,  
stickynge continually in hys memozie. Perennes  
(not onytinge, so grete an occasion) perswa-  
ded thempetur, to put vn to deathe, every one of the  
principall malefactours, and suffre not one of them to  
remayne a lyue. Into whose possessions hym selfe  
makynge invasyon, became without difficultie, the ry-  
chest of all men in those dayes. And after Perennes  
had diligentlye made inquisition of the sayd Treason,  
the very syster of Commodus, wth all the Coniu-  
ratours, and all other (whiche any suspicyon had cau-  
sed to be apprehended,) were put vnto death. Those be-  
yng ones dispatched oute of the waye, whos the yonge  
Emperour stode in awe of: and who loued hym wthy  
a certayne fetherly affection, Perennes tolde hym  
the fucion of the Emperours person: And having ob-  
tained very muche auctorite, compassed incontinently  
In hys mynde the occupying of thempire selfe. And so  
this purpose he enduced Commodus, to constitute hys  
sonnes

## The firske booke.

Pof. vii.

sonnes yonge men, beyng capitaynes ouer thyl-  
lyrian armes. He gathered together a wonderfull  
grete sume of money that he myght wth ryche bribes  
and giftes alienate the Pretorian Souldours fro the  
Emperour. His Sonnes also, priuelie leuied their po-  
wer, to the entent, that asdone as their father Peren-  
nes had slayne Commodus, they woulde by violence:  
take the dominion and rule vpon them. But this con-  
spiracie, was bewrayed by a wonderfull and incre-  
son of Pi-  
dible meane. The Romaines vled to celebrate certaine renes dis-  
plaies in the honour of Jupiter Capitoline, wherunto assembyed  
gathered a multitude of people, as is meete  
to resorte at any notable shewe to such a myghty Cite.  
The Emperour is also accustomed to beholde the same  
plaies, and to syl in the Theare with the highe Pre-  
tories, whome the oder doth verely appoynt. Now whē  
Commodus late in Thempetall Throne, earnestly  
beholding the gorgeous preparacions for the Trage-  
dies, and when the Theare was replenished with peo-  
ple, every mans place according to hys estatе beynge  
appoynted hym. Dodeinly, before any thing was done  
or spoke on the scaffoldes, one in þ habite of a Philoso-  
pher, bering in his hāde a clubbe, and halse naked, ha-  
ving a scryppe hanging downe frō hys sholder, came  
fursh in a Chariot. And stayeng in the myddes of the  
Scaffolde, wth his hande comaunded silence, and then  
sayed. This is no syne of playe (O Commodus) neyther  
to behold pageantes, for the Sworde of Perennes is  
hanging ouer thy sholders, and except thou take good  
heade, to auoyde it, the daunger is not immynent but  
present, and thou arte vndone: for hym selfe here pre-  
sent, dothe leue power and money agaynst the. And  
hys Sonnes doa solicite Thilliran armes to rebel-  
lyon. Whiche vs thou do not preuent, thou arte but  
deade. With thiese wordes, (whether the man were  
styred therinto with any diuine inspiration, or be-  
yng but syngle, was so bolde to purchase hym selfe  
therby renoune, or elles hoped to obtayne some grete  
rewarde of Thempetur, truely he dyfmayed hym.  
The restle whiche were p̄esent also, althoughe they  
D.J. con-

The historie of Herodian

they conjectured that it was not for nought spokē) yet did they sayne not to give credite vnto it. And Perennes commaunded the man furthē to be apprechedē and as a furious and ydle talkatiue felowe to be buried. This rewarde had he for hys intemperate lyberty, but they whiche seemē to fauour Commodus, and had tofore detested Perennes, as a man of intollerablie prude, hauyng gotten a conueniente tyme, laboured wthy accusacyons, too bryng hym out of conceyce wthy themperour. And truelye, so muste it come to passe, that Commodus should escapeshis Treason, And Perennes with hys sonnes be for theyr demerites worthely rewarded. For no longe while after, certayne Gouldours had conueyed priuily from Perennes eldest Sonne, sundrye pieces of moneye, coyned wthy the stampē of hys pycure: And thosē, unwares of Perennes (although he wer principal Magistrate) they deliuere vnto Commodus. And hauing opened thole cyrcumstance of the pretended Treason, were with grete giftes recompenced. The night folowing were sent certaine from Commodus, to strike of Perennes head, who was ignoraunt of al this busines, and at that instant leſt lokē for any ſuche matter. That done, the ſame executyoners, (as they were comauded furthē wthy wente vnto hys Son, and making veri hallyſpede, preuented the rumoure of thosē thyngeſ that were done at Rome. At theyr commyng vnto hym, they delyuered hym frendlie letters from the perour, the which puttyng hym in great hope, willed hym to returne vnto Rome: wherby he was ignoraunt of all the dryſte, and ſynally of his fathers happe. For ſome of the meſſengerſ, tolde hym that he was called alsoo for by hys fathur, who(they ſayde) would haue written vntoo him likewyſe, yf he had not ſuppoſed, he would ſuffcyently regarde themperours letters. The poore man beleued it, and althoough he grudged ſomewhat that his enterprize was thus interrupted, yet affyng hym ſelue, in his fathurs mightē & auctoritie (whome he thoughte too be as yet in proſperouſe estate,) he prepared him ſelue to returne wthy them.

But

The death of Perenes  
at that instant leſt lokē for any ſuche matter. That done, the ſame executyoners, (as they were comauded furthē wthy wente vnto hys Son, and making veri hallyſpede, preuented the rumoure of thosē thyngeſ that were done at Rome. At theyr commyng vnto hym, they delyuered hym frendlie letters from the perour, the which puttyng hym in great hope, willed hym to returne vnto Rome: wherby he was ignoraunt of all the dryſte, and ſynally of his fathers happe. For ſome of the meſſengerſ, tolde hym that he was called alsoo for by hys fathur, who(they ſayde) would haue written vntoo him likewyſe, yf he had not ſuppoſed, he would ſuffcyently regarde themperours letters. The poore man beleued it, and althoough he grudged ſomewhat that his enterprize was thus interrupted, yet affyng hym ſelue, in his fathurs mightē & auctoritie (whome he thoughte too be as yet in proſperouſe estate,) he prepared him ſelue to returne wthy them.

The firſte booke.

Fol. viii.

But asſonē as he approched the borders of Italie, he was layne by them vnto whome the charge of therecution was committed. Thys ende had the fathur & the Sonne: After whom Commodus appointed y. governorſ, chynkyng it to be moze ſure, not to commynt ſo great an auctoritie vnto one man alone: but deuiding y ſame in y. parties, make it by y mean, the moze weake to rebell againſt the prince. But no long tyme A newe after, there were other Treasons conſpypred agaynt conſpira hym in this maner. There was a certayne Gouldour eſe named Paternus, bolde in enterprylong many facy Water- nozous factes. The ſame ſodeinly forſaking y Campe nus. and adioynyng into hys ſelowſhyp certaine of his co-panyons, gathered in a ſhorte ſpace an huge multy- tude of delperate ruffynes. Fyrſt he deſtroyed bylla- ges and cornefeldes, and than hauyng gotten a great ſumme of money, he ioyned dayly more bacabondes vnto hym, and by promyſyng them greate rewardes, & calling them to the deuilion of the pray, he brought the matter vnto ſuche poyn̄t, that they ſemed to haue the auþoritie, not of theuers, but of lufe enemys. For they occupied great Cityes, and therein brake y contynou gaoles, and toke out of prylon wþhouſe reſpecte all offendres, whome through thar release and benevolē, they annexed vnto them. Then they ſpoyleſ wþ inuaſions all Fraunce and Spayne, and whā theſe had taken any great Citie, they would ransake burne and utterly deface the ſame and than departe. Whercoſ when Commodus had knowledge, he ſentte letters not wanting angry chekkes, vnto the lieuete- naunteſ of the Countryes ther aboutes, reproouyng theyr cowardyſe, and ther wþth comauandyng them to leue an armee, for y ſubduyng of thosē rebellious bacabondes. Which thing when the Ruffines knew, they thought it bett to depart from thosē Countries. Therfore priuily by ſecrete býparches and unkno- wen wayes, they came into Italie, where Paternus conſulted wþth his complices, of thinauion of them- pyce, and other weyghty affaires. For ſeyng althyn- D.y. yes hitheſ

### The historie of Herodian

ges hytherunto had prospered wyth hym beyond his expectacyon, he determinyd to attempt some notable enterpryse, or at the least wyle, yf it chaunced amisse, too dye not obscurelye or like a coward. But yet per ceuyng hym selfe, not to haue so greate a power, as shoulde suffyse to resist Commodus, wyth an approued and chosen armee, (for he knew that Commodus was well beloued of the Romayne people and men of armes) he concluded to worke his seate by crafty conueaunce. And therefore Inuented thys wyle. In the begynnyng of the spryng tyme, vpon an appoynted holy day, þ Romaynes vled to celebrate a pompe vnto þ mother of þ Goddes. In þ solemnite, the best of euerye mans ryches, and Jewelles, and all thimperyll ornamenteſ, (whych are eyther for matter or worke worthy to be loked on) are wont to be brought furthe, before the Goddesse. And euerye where a lycento tol playe, is graunted all men, and too take vpon them the persones of whom it liketh eche man betwē. There is no magistrate or offycer, but he is there repreſented in the counterfaytynge of theyz persones by furtur as lyketh so to doo: so that a man can not rafshely diſcernē the true parson from the dysgayſed. Thys dyd Maternus recken to be a conuenyente tyme for the close atcheuyng of hys trayterous enterpryſe. Truſyng assuredlye, (yf him ſelfe toke vpon hym the perſon of one of themperours garde, and ar mynge hys confederates after the ſame sorte, mingle them ſelues amonigſ the ſpearemen, wherby they ſhoulde be thought to be of themperours retynewre, no man forſyng the matter) wyth a ſodeyne auaulte to ſlea Commodus. But beynge betrayed by certayne of hys adherentes that entered into the Cytye wyth hym, (who grudged that they ſhould her eafter accept him not as a Houlypoure theyz companyon, but as theyz prynce) before the ſeſtual day were nygh, he was taken and beheded: and all the residue of the ſame facio, were puniſhed w condigne tormentes of death. Powe after the ſacrifice was finished, Commodus did with thankesge-

Thereth  
of Mater  
nus.

### The fyſte booke.

Fol. ix.

chanskesgeuing paſſe furthe the feaſt of the Goddesſe: yea and the people beynge Joyfull for the preſeruacþ of theyz Emperor, celebrated merrily that daþe. But what the reaſon is, wherfore the Romaynes do ſo muſche honoure this Goddesſe, if ſemeth not amyſſe for me to make mencion of it, as I haue learmid out of Hiftories, especially because that matter is vñknowen vnto moſt of the Greekes. The ſame Image therefore (as they ſaþe) came downe from heauen, no certayneſtie remayning of what metall, or by what artiſter it was wrought: yea they conſtantely beleauere, it was neuer made with manes handes. Therofore, they affirme, that it fell downe from heauen into a certain ſyelde of Phrigya, the whiche they coniecture to haue the name Pelenuntis, (by the fall of the ſame Image) Pelenut vpon it. For there they ſaþe, it appeared fyſte. Pet do I fynde amonigſ other authoress, that there be twene Iulus the Phrigian, and Tantalus the Lydian. The bat- was foughten the batayle, eyther beynge for the way or tayle be- rather for þ rauylſhing of Ganimedes. And when they twene I- had longe foughten, wyth equal strengþ, and verye Iulus þ phri- mayn on bothe sydes ſlayne) that the name was ſeven gian, and vnto the ſyelde by that aliamite. There alſo (thel report Tantalus is) that Ganimedes beynge drawen to and fro by the ths Lidi- handes of his brother and louer, was depriued of hys an- lyfe: And beynge taken away, a ſable was inuenched for Ganimedeſ the comfort of his louer, that he was endowed by Ju- des. piter hys rauylher wyth many dyuine honoures. In that fielde Pelenuntis, (wherof I haue ſpoken) dyd the Phrygians in tyme paſſe worshyppe, and cele- brate the ceremoniies of the infernall Goddesſe even at the ryuer of Gallus, or the whiche the women prie. The ry- uers of the Goddesſe are ſurnamed: But whan the uer Gal- lus. Romayne Empyre encreaſed, (an Oracle beynge re- ceyued that the Empyre ſhoulde be augmented to the btermoſte, yf the Romaynes woulde tranport the Pelenuntian Goddesſe vnto them,) There were Em- The Pe- balladours ſente into Phrigya, too reuyze the Sta- synuntia- tue of the Goddesſe, the whiche was eaſely geaunid Goddesſe vntoo theym, because they ſaþe that the Romaynes were D. iii.

### The Historie of Herodian

Were of kyndred unto the Phrigians, beyng descended of Aeneas the same countrey manne. When as therefore, they hadde broughte the ymage in hyppe unto the verye mouthe of Tiberis, whiche the Romaynes then used in steade of a hauen, sodenly with a certayne dyvine power, the hyppe stoke faste, neither coulde it be remoued wyth anye strengthe of the people drawynge at it, vntyll a Clesall byrgyn came thither. The same beyng sclaundered, that she had deflowred her virginitye, (whiche oughte evermore to be inviolatly preserued) fearynge condempnacion, instantly increated the people, that they woulde commyte the iudgemente of her, unto the Pelynuncian Goddesse. That ones obtayned, she bounde the maste of the hyppe wyth her gyrdell, mooste humbly desyringe, that vs the Goddes knewe her an uncorrupte virgyn, she woulde commaunde the hyppe to come forwardes. And when she hadde so sayde, she drewe the gyrdell in her hande, and the hyppe beganne to folowe. So dyd the Romayne togidher wonder at the manysell diuinitie of the God heade, and the innocencie of the virgyne. But this much haue I hytherunto treated of the Pelynuncian Goddes, peraduenture somewhat more tediously then it behoues, but yet lyke to byngye vs unprofesstable knowledge vnts them that are not throughlye skylfull in all the Romayne assayres. Powre Commodus(hauyng escaped the treason of Maternus, dyd wyth a greater Garde strengthen hym selfe, and came verye scaldome abrode, conuainc mooste parte of the tyme in the Suburbes, or in hys Principall Manours farre from the Cyte, and vitterlye ablayned from sytynge in iudgemente, and all Imperiall actes. At the same tyme, a wonderfull plague vexed all Italie: but it was mooste furious in the cyte of ROME, as in a place replenysshed wyth people, and receauyng straungers from all partes of the worlde. Wherby there happened a mervaylouse grete morreyne of menne and beastes. Then Comodus

### The fyrete booke.

Fol.x.

modus departed unto Laurentum, (for so had some conninge Physicians counstyld hym) because it Laurent was a moore coulde Regyon, and shadowed wyth sum many woodes of Laurell, of whome also the Countrey hathe hys name. For they sayde that the saunce of the Laurells, and the plesauntelle of The re shadowes, dyd greate preuylo to the ausy, medye a dyng of the contagion of the ayre. And therefore gainst in the Cyte selfe, by the Physicians aduytmentes, the pest manye stopped theyr eares and noses wyth swete lence, oyntementes, and used dayly delectable vapors and perfumes, that the pozes of the senses shoulde not admittie into them anye pestiferouse smell, and yf they receyued anye, that the perfumes wyth a greater strengthe shoulde vanquish the same. But neuerthelesse the sycknes encreased, descrepeng eyry where bothe men and cattell. Bea the dyd also greate famyne vere and oppresse the Cyte, by this occasion. There was a certayne Byrgyan named Cleander, of that sorte of menne that are sonde of penye by Cryers: The same beyng put to lerance Cleader in the Emperours house, encreased gretelye in foure wyth Commodus, and was enhauised unto syvhghe dignytie, that he alone obtayned the custodie of the Emperours parson, the charge of hys Chamber, and the gouernance of hys Garde. Michell and pryd dyd besydes sturre hym to hope of Henryre. Wherfore hauyng gathered together a grete somme of money, he boughte a wonderfull quantite of wheate, and the same he hadde costely shute vp, trystyng that he shoulde wynne the harres of the people and the armes, yf that he releved wyth large gystes, thole that before were in greate penurye of necessarie foode. He had also bylded a verye large schole for exercyses, and many common bates, that he myght by that meanes allure the people unto hym. But the Romaynes were offendyd wyth hym before, imputyng all the cause of thys deache unto hym onely.

W. M. And

The Historie of Herodian

End deteyning him, as man unsaciablie of rychedesse, thei  
Theatre: ffirst assembled by embushmentes unto the Theaters,  
and afterwarde (Commodus beyng in the Suburbes)  
sodeynly they came all thither, wryth huge clamors,  
demannding Cleander vnto death, and when the hoie  
suburbes were fulled with noyse and tumulte, & Com-  
modus hym selfe was at his accustomed pleasures in  
an upper chamber, ignorant of all that was donne,  
(Cleander perdy had so provided) sodenly beyonde all  
mens expectation: the Emperours horlychest armes  
brake furthe with violence by the commandemente  
of Cleander, driving downe and wounding every man  
they met. The people beyng on foote, & without wea-  
pon, were not able to sustayne the brunte of the horse-  
men: Wherefore with hasty fleyinge they retayned into  
the Cyre, where many of them were destroyed, not so-  
nely those whome the horsemen slewe wryth weapon,  
but also they whome the horses had wryth theyr feate  
troden downe, & thei that fought eyther in the prese of  
the forefren, or elles amone the horses. The horsemen  
so pursyng them without any impedimente vnto the  
gates of the Cyre, beseeched a grete parte of the peo-  
ple. But they that remayned within, knowing the ca-  
lamyte of theyr feendes without, shutte theyr doores  
and gate up into the rooses, and toppas of their hou-  
ses, and threwe downe vppon the horsemen bothe stones  
and ryles. Therby was the fortune sodenly chaun-  
ged; when no horseman durst at that presente ftryue,  
all the people fghting safly from aboue against the.  
Wherefore many of them beyng wounded when they  
coude no lenger endure, turned their backes and fled:  
many of them were also slaine through the contynual  
and thicke fallynge of weapones, and many striken  
from theyr horses, whicheoulderid amone the ston-  
nes that were throwen downe. Mea, and the footmen  
whyche had stations within the cyte, came to rescue  
the people against the horsemen, whom they utterly  
dotesyd. And althoughe this were a Cyryle batayle,  
yet durst no man for feare of Cleanders power de-  
clare it vnto Commodus, vntyll his eldest Syster na-  
med

The firste booke.

Fol. xi.

med Fadilla vnto hym (for the approchynge vnto his  
presence was easie for hys Syster) wryth her heare  
loose fel downe onher knees, defourmed wryth a mour-  
nyng garmente, and sayde. Truly (O Prynce) why-  
les ye lyve here in peace, ye are in extreme peryll. And  
we that are of your bloude are almoste vndone. The  
people of Rome are destroied. The most parte of your  
armye is consumed. And thole thynges we thoughte  
not to suffre of y Barbariens, the same doth our own  
housholde seruautes vnto vs. And they vpon whom  
you haue bestowed mooste bountifull benefyces, the  
same are youre mooste extreme enemyes. Cleander  
hath armes the people and Souldyours against you,  
amonges whome he is of some abhorred, and of some  
entierely beloued. Yet are they both in armes, do co-  
myt murdre wythin them selues, and fyll Rome with  
Cyryle bloude. But vpon oure neckes wyll the myl-  
rye of hothe compaines lyghte, excepte you do deliuer  
vnto death wryth all haste, a mooste pernycyous & wyc-  
ked Seruaunte, whych hath bene aucthour of so greet  
a calamyte vnto them already, and entendereth shorly  
to be se vnto vs. Whyles she thus sayde, she rente her  
clothes, and manye that were presente, hauyng ta-  
ken courage of the womans woordes, dyd put Com-  
modus in feare also. He beyng amased, and dreading  
the daunger, not as Immynente, but presente, com-  
maunded Cleander to be called hastely vnto hym, not  
somewhat was tolde themperoure. And as he came  
before hym, themperoure commaunded hym too be  
apprehended, and too haue hys head strycken of: And The pe-  
beyng set vpon a Speare too be carp'd aboue. Kno-  
wyng that he shoulde shewe vntoo the people a plea-  
saunce and desyred syghte. Thus was thys mys-  
chefe appeased, and the syghte on eyther syde allwa-  
ged. For the Souldyours when they sawe him dead,  
for whom they fought feared the indygnacyon of the  
Emperour, whom they perceived too be deluded, and  
that nothing was done by hys commaundement. The  
people on thother parte accoumpted the selges satissid  
E.i. wryth

### The historie of Herodian

wyth the death of the begynner of the mischiefe. The chyldren also of Cleander, (for he had twoo sonnes) & all his frendes were at one tyme slayne, and theyz bo- dies being drauen through the Citie, and most filthe- ly ordered, were at the last thowen into the common synkes of the Citie. This was the ende of Cleanders destanies. And in hym onely mans nature, can (as I myghte say) boldely bragge, that a man may be aduan- ced from mosse byle and lowe estate, vnto the hyghest type of dignite, and being so exalted, fall downe in the leaste and sodeyne momente of fortune. Then Com- modus, (aloughhe he feared that the people woulde moue some newe tumulte againste hym) yet by hys frendes perswasyons, retourned into the Citie. And being receyued wyth ioyfull shoutes and assemblyes.

The begynninge of h̄ people entered into thimperial palayce. And cer- ninge of tainly so many perylles beinge past, he began from Commo- chencfurthe to trust no creature: but to destroy now dus tyra- this, i now that man, gynnyng credyte vntoo euerye false accusacion. He toke besides into his frendshyp, no man in whome was any vertue remaynyng, but dyd withdrawe his mynde equallye from all good stu- dye. For the vnbrydeled lustes of the bodye, dyd bothe day and nighte oppresse him wyth most greuous bon- dage. He remcued as a spie from his gate, every man whom eyther goodnes, or any meane and honest qua- litie, did beautifie. But slaues and suche as vsed most filthye maners, hadde hym as wholly addicted vnto them. He vsed alsoe aboue measure cartynge and sles- ing of beastes. For the which exercyses, the flattering Parasites extold him with fame of soxitude. There by he behayed him selfe in those thynges more dishon- nestly, then became a sober & prudent Prince. At that season were apparaunte in the skye, certayne prody- gyouse tokenes. For starres appeared contynually by daye lyghte, and manye of them beyng stretched out in lengthe, semed too hange in the myddes of the ayre. Beastes besydes of all kynde were broughte furthe, not obseruyng theyz nature, wyth mon- strous shape of bodye, and membres notynge agree- able.

Carting.

Prodigy- ouse to- kens in the ayre.

### The fyrste booke.

Fol. xl.

able. But the greatest calamytie partely brought pre- sente doloure, and especyally afterward wyth moost myserable conjecture, dyd put all men in feare. For when there had neyther anye shoures or cloudes, sa- uynge onely a lytle earthquake preceeded (whether it were by chaunce wyth lyghtenyng in the nyghte, or elles wyth anye fyre kyndeled in the earthe) the hole Temple of peace was sodeynelye burnte. The The Te- whyche worke, of all other in the Cythe was grea- fesse and moosse heawtyfull, and of all the Temples peaces bur- moosse ryche, and gorgyouslye buylded, and ador- ned wyth muche golde and syluer. For almosste e- verye man broughte hys substance thither, as in- too a treasourye. And therby the fyre so ragynge in the nyghte, broughte manye that were riche in to extreame pouertye. Wherfore all men bewayled the common calamytie openlye, and euerye man la- manted hys owne losse pryuateleye. When all the Temple was consumed, bearey manye the heaw- tyfuller buildinges of the Citie were enflamed with fyre also. Amonges the which þ temple of Westa was one, so that the Palladiu was sene, the which the Ro- maynes do chiefely worship and kepe secrete, beyng broughte (as they saye) from Troye, and at that time first lythens it came into Italye, sene of all men. For the Westall Virgines, hauing with muche difficultye sauied it, carued it through þ crete named Sacra via, vnto thimperours palayce. Many the goodlyest par- tes besydes of the Citie were burned. And the fyre ra- gnyng many daies was not ceased, before that sodaine shoures quenched it. Wherfore all men that time re- ferred the hole matter vnto the Goddes, by whose wil they thought the fyre to be begon and ended, interpre- ting warres (þ di ensue) to be signified by þ burning of þ Temple of Peace. The which conjecture of things the hap did afterward verifie. For (þ Citie being ver- ed with manye greuous discōmodities) the people dyd not (as they were wonte) beholde Commodus bene- volentlye, but euerye one imputed the cause of theyz miserye vnto hys dysolute and pernycyouse vices,

E. G.

fol.

The Pe- ple of Westa.

The Im- age of Dallias.

Westal virgins.

## The fyfte booke.

middes of the Amphitheater, a gallerie sor Conimus. In the which he myght runne rounde about, lest Amphitheatre. that syghting beneth with the beastes, he shold be in daunger. But by casting his dartes fro aboue, as ouer of a lase place, he shoulde rather shew his cunning of thowring then any valiautnesse. In pursuing them he stake hertes and hyndes, and other horned beastes besydes bulles, and preuenting the with a swyfte course ouerthrewe them, by mooste assured strokis. The Lyons and Pathers wylth other fierce beastes of that kynde, runnyng rounde aboue he slewe with dartes thoro wen at any of them, nor any woude but that was dead ly. For as soone as the beast ones sturred, he wounded him eyther in the sofe heade, or at the hart, blyng none other scope, nor appoyntinge to thowre at anye other parte of the bodye, so that the beaste wylth the verye strokis, was beraste hys lyfe. There were beastes besydes gotten from all partes of the earthe. And the dyd we beholde with sure eyes, those thinges we meruayled at in paynting. For ouer of India & Ethyope, and out of the South and Northe, (what so euer were knownen in the former worldes,) the same dyd he borthe shew furthe, and slea at one tyme, every man beyng abashed, at hys so stedfasse a hande, and at the darteres never saylynge stroke. He also stroke wylth dartes, Dystriches of Hawritany, the whiche (throughe the swyftnes of their feate, and as it were wylth layle of their winges) ranne very swifly) touching the toppes of their neckes, & there withall strikenge of their heades, and the hinder parte of the necke (wher the stroke lighted) beyng cutte of, they would a lytle whyle contynewe theyz course, as though they were yet lyuynge. Pea and a Pather (the whiche having with a very behemet course overtaken a man) thruste into the Theater (seamed redy to deuoure hym) he wounded so sodeinly that the beaste beyng kyllid, he preserued the man, preuentynge the edge of her teathe, wylth the sharpe bedde of hys darte. He also slewe an hundred Lyons, brought furthe of a caue with like many strokis, their bodys

E.13.

The Gyffete of of. For his hande was reportez to be so stedfasse, that what so euer he had thowen or shotte at wylth darteres. or arrowe, the same wold he assuredly strycke. And he Parthies retayned daily about him mooste approuzed archers of & Pumi- Parthia, & Pumydane slyngers, all the whiche hym midens. selfe in cunnyngge farre excelled. Nowe when the daye of this Pageande was come, there was buylded in the myddes

Th Historis of Herodian

bodys so layde in order, that they myghte easely  
be nombrd, no darte beyng thowen in bayns.  
These thynges therefore that were hyther unto dom  
(aloughhe they seamid bneate for a Prynce) yet  
because they declared a certayne fortynesse and cun-  
nyng deserned commendacion of the people.  
But when he enteryd naked into the Amphitheater,  
and wearynge harnesse supplied the nombre of the  
sworde players, then appeared a lamentable syghte  
to the Romaynes, that theyr noble Emperour, af-  
ter so manye tryumphes of hys father and ances-  
tors, dyd not onely beare armes appertaynyng to  
the Empyre agaynst beastes, but dyd also spotte  
the chieffeste dignyte wth moolle sylthye apparell.  
In syghtyng he easelye conuynced hys equalles,  
wythoute beyng ones wounded, euery manne wth-  
drawyng hys force, and acknowlegynge hym ra-  
ther an Emperoure then a sworde player. And he  
fell into that furye that he intended to forsake the  
Imperyll Courte, and to remoue into the schole of  
defence. Neither suffered he hym selfe anye more to  
be named Hercules, hauyng adopted the name of  
an excellente sworde player, the whyche a lyttle be-  
fore dyd. Pea hauyng taken the heade from the  
**Colossus** greate Image called Colossus that represented the  
lymalytude of the Sonne, (beyng verye moche wo-  
lypped of the Romaynes) he putte thereon the pyc-  
ture of hys owne heade, and wrate at the foote there-  
of, not hys accustomed tydes of the Empyre and hys  
father, but for the name of Germanyen, he put in  
the banquysh of a thordande Maystres of defence.  
But it was requypte, he shoulde ones synyshe hys  
madnesse, and the Cytye he delyuuered from hys Tyr-  
anny. And that in the begynnyng of the yere,  
**Ianus.** the whiche daye the Romaynes holde verye solempne,  
dedicatyng it unto Janus the anciens G D of  
Saturne Italye. Of the whiche Regione, thei reported Satur-  
Jupiter, nus (beyng expelled by hys sonne Jupiter) to be a

The fyrete booke,

Fo. xiii.

straunger, and because that he there hydde hym selfe,  
the name of Latium to be genē unto it. Whersoe the Latium.  
Romaynes do fyre celebrate, after theyr custome the  
feastes of Saturnus, and then the begynnyng of the Satur-  
vere. The Image of thys G D is wroughte with nus sea-  
two faces, as of hym by whome the yere begynneth, tis.  
and in whome the yere endyth. When the Cite helde  
(as I sayd) thys daye with solemnitye, in the whiche  
the Romaynes do sende one to an other newe yeres Newe ye-  
gistes, and all sortes of presentes, and the magistrates res gyf-  
wen bewtyfull scarlette, (all menne wth gladnesse tes.  
celebratyng the same daye) Commodus determinyd  
to come abroade, not oute of the Emperours pa-  
lace (as the olde vlage was) but oute of the verye  
schole of defence. And for gorgyouse apparayle and  
Imperyll purple to go armed in the compayne of  
the Romayne people. Whiche hys counsell, when he  
hadde declared unto Martia one of hys concubynes,  
(unto whome he opened the greatest partes of hys le-  
crettes and espeamed her almosse as hys wyfe so that  
all honours lauyng the fyre were borne before  
her as Empresse) the woman hauyng perceaued  
hys so dyshoneste entente, fell vpon her knees be-  
fore hym, incessantlye desyryng hym wth ma-  
nye teares that he woulde not lustre the Maistre of  
the Romayne Empyre to be defyled, or committre hym  
selfe so daungerouslye unto myschewouse and despe-  
rate personnes. But when she coulde nothyng a-  
nayle she departed wepyng. And he hauyng cal-  
led unto hym the Capytayne of hys armie named  
Letus, and Electus hys Chamberlayne, comman-  
ded theim to prepare all thynges for hys lodgyng the Letus.  
same nyghte in the schole of defence, that he myght in Electus  
the mornynge goo from Nunc to sacryfyce, and  
hewe himselfe armed unto the people of Rome. Thei  
endeououred wth manye intercessions to dyswade  
hym from enterpryse anys thynges vndescente to  
a Prynce. But Commodus chauffed wth  
anger

straunger,

Cally.

### The Historie of Herodian

Philocō-  
modus.

nger hauyng commaunded them to auoyde hys presence returned into hys chambre that he myghte, (as he was accustomed) slepe at noone. And there takyng into hys handes a thynne boke made of the bark of a tree and soldyng to eþher syde, he wrote in the same all those he intended to sea the same night. Of whom Martia was fyrlle, and next vnto her Letus and Electus, and after them a greats number of those that bare moost rule in the Senate. For he determinyd to destroye all tholde men that were hys fathars frendes (leaff theyz auchozptye shoulde hynder hys werkynnes) and to dystribute their goodes amonges þ doublours and sworg players, þ the one company shoulde wyth strengthe defende hym, and thoþher wyth pleasures delyte hym. The same boke so wrytten he threw downe on hys bedde, not suspectynge that anye man woulde enter into the chamber. But there was alþe Woxe, yet of the sorte of them, that beyng cloþed wyth no garmentes, sauing luche as are decked with golde and precyouse stones are wonte too be the pleasures of euerye delicate Romayne. The same Woxe was so entirlye beloued of Commodus, that he often tyme laye wyth hym, and was called Phylocommodus (the name it selfe declarynge the Princes affection). Hys chylde by chaunce playinge (whan Commodus was occupied in the bayne and ryottinge) entered into the chambre, and takyng the booke in hys hande to playe wythall, wente oute of the doores, and by chaunce mette with Martia, who for that she loued the Woxe, syrke embraced and kyssed him and toke the booke oute of hys hande, fearynge leaff the chylde shold through his infancie, vñwarres empayre thinges of Importaunce. Afterwarde knowyng the hande of Commodus, and moued wyth desyre too reade it, when he perceyued the pernyctyouse ententes therin contained, and her selfe to be syrke mencioned, Letus wyth Electus to folowe, and fynally so great a murdere of others lykely to ensue, she inwardly lamented sayinge. Ah Commodus, are these the rewardes of frenþy and loue. Hauie I thus deserued of the after

I haue

### The frst boke.

Fol. xv.

I haue so many peres abydden thy chekkes and dronkennes? But these thinges shall not so prospere with the vndyscrete and dronken person agaynste a sober & well adysled woman. Then she had thus spoken she called Electus (wyth whome she was accustomed to talke famþyarelye, because he was the Emperours Chamberlayne, and wyth hym she was also supposed to haue carnall compayne) and deliuered the boke vnto hym, saying. Beholde Electus what banquet we shoulde haue bene at this nyght folowing. He beyng astened wyth the redyng of it (for he was an Egypcyan boþie, stoute, fynyshe, and quycckelye syzed to anger) sent the boke closely sealed by a trusty trend of hys vnts Letus to reade. The whiche also abashed wyth it, came furthwyth vnto Martia, seynnyg that he woulde consulte wyth her, concerning the preparacyon in the schole of defencie as the Emperour had commaunded. Usyngh therefore thys glose, they determined to doo, or suffre some thing out of hande, knowyng that there was no tyme of deferryng the matter. They consented at latke that the feate shoulde be wroughte by poyson. The whiche Martia tooke vpon her to mynster speadelye. For she was wonte too prepare drynke for hym, and to gyue hym the cuppe that it myghte be thoughte more sweter beyng deliuered from hys louer. She gaue vnto hym therefore as he came from the bayne poyson myngled with bervz pleasaunte wyne in a goblet. And he hauynge caughte a chyrste in washyng hym selfe and huncryng, dranke raschelwe the drynke as of custome pratered vnto him. Wherewyth beyng immedeatelye troubled wyth atche in hys heade and desyrous of sleape, (supposyng it came by laboure,) gaue hym selfe to resse, Electus and Martia commaunded incontynentlye euerye man to departe to hys owne house, leasse they shoulde dysurbe the Emperoure hauyng neede of sleape, whiche he was accustomed also to doo at other tymes throughe Immoderate dronkennes. So when he bathed hym self, or elles fell to banquetinge, he kepte no certayne tyme of sleape.

F.i.

The

## The Historie of Herodian.

The sensualites risinge and muche differynge one from another, so constrained the man, (yea sometyme vnwylling) to serue th̄. Whā he had soz a smal tyme rested him selfe, and the behemency of the poyson was now entered his stomake and belye, a gidnes cōbzed his head, and vomyng furthwth folowed, cyther through the meat ȳ he had before largely eaten, or the drinckyng of muche wyne that resyssed the poyson, or elles throughe the usage that Princes obserue in taking of medicines before they eate any meat, for feare of poysonyng. But when he had vomited very muche they fearynge leaste all the venyme beyng auoyded, he would thereby recover, and the commaund theym al toguther to be slayne, perswaded for a great reward a certayne bolde and stoute yonge man named Narcissus, to strangle him in hys Chaumber. Thys ende of life had Commodus, when he hadde raigned after his fath̄er in the Empyre. xiiii. yeres. A man of al other Emperours most noble, & of all men in ȳ age the most beautifull. But too speake of his prowes & fortitude he might in ȳ be preferred to any other, especallye in sure strikyng that he had thowen at. Neuertheles he defyled (as before is tolde) all the state of hys lyfe wyth abhomynable byces.

Narcissus.  
Commo-  
dus strā-  
gled to  
death.

The ende of the fyſt booke.

## The Argumente of the ſeconde booke.

**I**n the ſeconde booke is declared how Pertinar was chosen Emperour, howe longe time he raigned, & how he was slaine by the men of armes whiche tolde hempyre afterwardes vnto Julianus. How Seuerus became Emperour by the delars of Niger. And howe Julianus was slayne, and the death of Pertiner reuenged by Seuerus.

E(\*\*\*).D

C The

## The Seconde Booke of the Historie of He- radian.

Fol.xvi.



Her that Commodus was strangled (as we haue in the former Booke declared) the murdererſ extensing to conceale the facte, and to deceave ȳ Emperours garde, deliniered the body wrapped in an olde couerlet, vnto. ii. trustie and faythfull seruautes to carry furthe of the Palace, as it were ſome ſtuffe that pefſered the chambre.

And they that bare it paſſed throughe the myddes of the watchemen, of the whiche ſome were dronke and ſlepte, letting their halberdes fall out of theyr handes. The other whiche were awake, neglected the fardell whyche they ſuppoſed not to appetaigne vnto theyr charge. Then they ſente the princes bodye, (thus conueyed by ſtealthe, and in the nyghte layde in a wagon) vnto a place named Ariffeus. This ended, Letus, Elec- Appo- plerie, tus, and Martia, after they had longe consulted what was beſte to be donne, at the laſte concluded to ſpreade a rumoz of his deathe, that he ſodevalye fell into an Appo- plerie.

Pertin-  
nat.

F.ij. ente,

The Historie of Herodian.

ente, and he onely remayned alyre of all the gracie  
councaylors, that were leste vnto Commodus by his  
faifer, and vnto hym amounges all the capitaynes his  
Companions, he had shewed mosse honoure and re-  
uerence. Being yet safe, cyther for that Commodoſus fea-  
red hys grauitie, or elles dyslymuled because of his po-  
uertrye. For this also dyd amplifve hys renowme, that  
hauyng mosse auctorite of all men, yet of all men  
he seamed the pooreſte. Unto this Pertynar therfore  
wente Letus, and Elecetus, with a fewe of theyr com-  
plices aboue mydnyghte, whyles all men slepte. And  
finding his gates locked thei called vpon the porter. Who  
when he opened the gate, and sawe Letus the chyſe  
Capitayne & the ſouldayors preſente with hym, beynge  
ſore diſmayed wythall, ranne and tolde Pertynar. He  
furthwyth commaunded them to be lette in, layenge  
that anon woulde happen the myſchiefe he had vnto  
that daye loked for. He was of ſo conſtantē a mynde,  
that he moued not ones from his bedde, nor chaunged  
hys countenaunce. But wyth a bolde and ſtoute fro-  
macke nothyng abalſhed ſpake vnto Letus and Elec-  
etus when they were entered ( althoughe he beleaued  
they were ſente to ſlea hym ) theſe wordes. I haue of  
longe tyme every nyght loked for this ende of my life,  
the whyche onely am remaynyng of all hys fathers  
frendes. Wherefore I meruayled for what purpoſe  
Commodoſus ſo longe deferred the matter. Why do you  
therfore thus ſraye and not execute that ye are com-  
maunded and delyuer me from this dolefull and con-  
tinual dread. Unto theſe wordes anſwered Letus ſay-  
nge. Ceale (q he) to talke of thyngis vnworþy your  
ſelue and your former lyfe, we came not to deſlyze your  
deathe, but the preſeruacion of oure ſelues and all the  
Romaine Empyre. For the Tyrante is dead, and hath  
ſuffered condigne punyfment, receauyng at oure  
handes theſe thinges he intended to do vnto vs. And  
we are commen hither to deliuer the Imperiall power  
vnto you, whom onely of all the ſenate for temperaunce  
of lyfe, auctoritie, age, and grauyte of maners, we  
knowe

The ſeconde boke

Fo. xvii.

knowe to be beſte & entreyly beloued & reverenced of  
the people, Truſtyng that we doo, halbe acceptable  
vnto the, and profitable to oure ſelues. Unto whome  
Pertynar anſwered. Leue of ( ſayd he) thus to ſcorns  
and mocke an olde man and ſo reproue him of timori-  
eūſis, entendyng syſte to deceave, and after to ſlea  
hym. Why q Electus ſeyng that you do not cr-  
edyte vs, take this lytle hooke ( for ſuerly ye knowe the  
hāde of Commodoſus) reade it your ſelue and ye ſhall per-  
fectlie perceave what great daſger we haue escaped:  
neither ſhal ye fynde in our wordes any temptation,  
but truſte reprotoe of truthe. The whyche when  
Pertynar had done, thynkyng it beſte to beleauē  
them whyche had bene alwayes theretofore hys eſpe-  
ciall friendes, and vnderſtandyng all the matter, he  
commytted hym ſelue wholye vnto theyr power. It  
ſeamed good therfore vnto them to go forſake vnto the  
hoolle and to assayle the myndes of the ſouldayours,  
whome Letus promiſed eaſely to wyinne vnto his ſen-  
tence, because he knewe that hys auctorite ( be-  
yng the Capitayne) woulde ſomewhat preuaile amounges them. Wherefore as many as were preſente  
haſted them vnto the Campe, when muſche of the  
nyghte was paſſed nexte before the fyſte daye of Ja-  
nuarie. They ſente belydes truſte messengers to  
ſpreade abrode the rumor that Commodoſus was dead.  
And that Pertynar ( whyche ſhoule be Imperour)  
was nowe goynge towardes the hōſte. That bruyte  
beyng ones blowen, ſodeynly all the people ( as they  
were madde ) ranne throughe the ſtreates. All menne  
reioyſed, and euery manne ſeueraly wente to tell hys  
frende, whyche hadde eycher dygnitie or rychelle  
remaynyng: for vpon theim depended the greateſte  
daſger, whyle Commodoſus lyued. They wente ther-  
fore vnto the Temples to render thanckes vnto the  
G O D D C S, talkyng togidher diuersely. Some  
ſayde the Tyrante is deſtroyed: ſome other the  
ſworde player. Pea manye ſpake thynges moxe de-  
testable.

F. iij.

And

## The Historie of Herodian.

And suche wordes as feare had tyl that dave reppressed  
in syience, the same did thei now thughe licencie fre-  
ly goten bluster oute. A great parte also of the people  
ranne hastely to the campe, fearinge lest the menne of  
armes wold not willyngly accepte Pertinar for Em-  
perour. For thei thought that a moderate Prince was  
not verye grattfull vnto the Souldiors, who were ac-  
cUSTOMed to serue tyrrany, and exercycle all visience.  
Wherfore they ranne in diuerse plumpes vnto the  
Campe for to cōpel them to obedience. And when they  
were there arrined, Letus, and Electus, w<sup>th</sup> Pertinar,  
came thither also. And (the me of Armes beyng called  
together) Letus said thus vnto them. Q̄modus your  
Emperour is deade of an Appoplexie. No other man  
was the cause of hys death then himselfe. For whē we  
in bayne gaue him good and holsome counsel, he or-  
deringe himselfe as you all knowe he accustomed, was  
sodeynlye choked with ouermuche meate and drincke  
so that he perlyshed by the ende hymselfe sought. For  
all men dye not by one kynde of death, but vnto many  
men there are dyuers causes, and yet all tende to one  
ende. But touching hym, we and the people of Rome  
haue brought vnto you, a man graue in age, moderate  
in lyfe, and very experie in warfare, whose balyante  
prowesse, you that are aunciente Souldiors, haue by  
experience knownen. And the resle haue iudged (beyng  
so many yeres ruler of the Cyte) not onely worshielst  
honour, but also admiracion & wāder. Wherfore for-  
tune hath not alone lyuē him as a prudēt Prince,  
but also a moste longing father vnto you. Whose sou-  
raigntie in thempyre shall not perticularly be mooste  
pleasaunte vnto you that prelently beholde hym, but  
also vnto them that defende the bankes of Rivers, and  
the boundes of the Romayne Emprye, as those that  
retaine in memory the notable actes by him atchiued.  
We shall not at thys presente, wynne the Barba-  
rouse people vnto vs by gystes, but beyng myndfull  
of those thynges they suffered whyles thys man was  
Capytayne, they wyll be rather subdued wþt feare.  
Whan Letus hadde spoken these woordes, the people  
coulde

## The seconde boke

Fo. xvii.

could no longer wþthholde them selues. But (whyles  
the menne of armes stooode styll in theyz dompes) they  
pronounced Pertinar Emperour, and callynge hym Perty-  
theyz parent, they prayled hym with moost ioyful ac-  
clamacyons. The same dyd the Souldours also, al-  
though not with like alacritie. But the nomber of the  
people myred amonges them (beyng boyde of armure  
and celebratyng the feastfull day) easlye compelled the  
to shoute, and call Pertinar Augustus. Furthwþt  
(they being sworne in allegaunce vnto hym, and the  
sacrifice ended) all the people and men of armes crow-  
ned wþt Lawrell, folowed hym. After he was con-  
veyed in the nyghte (as we before sayde) into the Im-  
periall Palayce by the Souldours and the people,  
he was troubled wþt manye cares. And although he  
seimed too be of a constante and stoute mynde, yet dyd  
thynges presente put hym in feare, nat verye muche so  
lyceted for hys owne life, (for he had at other tymes  
contempned greater perlyles) but throughte the recor-  
ding in hys mynde the sodaine mutacion of tiranny,  
and ponderyng the noblytie of manye Senatours,  
who he thought woulde not permitt after an Empe-  
roure of moost noble byrthe thempyre to come vnto a  
man of pryuate and base stocke. For al be it hys tem-  
perate and frugall lyfe were well spoken of, and that  
he had gotten in warrelyke assayres great renowne,  
yet was he of symple lygnage. Wherfore after the  
dave appeared he wente too the Senate house, nat  
suffryng the syze or anye other tokens of dygnitye,  
too be borne before him, vntyll the determinacion  
of the Senate were hearde. Whoo as soone as  
they saw him received him al by one accord wþt ioyfull  
welcommynge, saluting him as Augustus and Em-  
perour. But he refusyng the name of Emperoure as  
a thyng odious, excused his age and desyred pardon,  
saying there were many of the Senatours more wox-  
thy thempyre then he. And wþt that worde he tooke  
Glabrio by the hande, commaundynge hym to syl in  
Thempreyall Throne. For this Glabrio was the no-  
blest of the Senatours, accompyng the lyne of hys bilitie of  
genealogie Glabrio,

F. iii.

## The historie of Herodian

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me  
of armes, that thei shold herte or oppresse none of the  
people, neyther do injury to any wane farsing man, & fu  
nally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauoir and

The ma- modestie. Wher he entered or sate in iudgement, he sh  
ners and wed a curteyle countenaunce, and soz that he chiefly  
behuoir represented Marcus, he gaue a greate delectacion bnt  
of Pertii to the Elders, and the relydue of the people, he easelye  
drew to lone hym, beyng delinered from cruell tiran  
nye, and brought into a quiet lyse. The repozte hereof  
beyng once farre of diuulged, prouoked all naciōs and  
armies, either subiecte or confederate to the Romaine  
people, to gyue deuine honors unto hym. Pea yf anye  
of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romayne  
subiectio[n], or styrred any sedicion (throughe feare of  
his prowelis, whyche they did remember he shewed in  
the former warres, and throughe confydence of hys  
iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offendid no  
man, but gaue prayses unto every man worthye hys  
meryses, and that he was voyde of vvolence and cruel  
tve) of theyr free willes they realded them selues unto  
hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassa  
dors, to gratysye the people of Rome, that they were  
gouverned by the authoritye of Pertynar. But the  
thing that was most acceptable unto the greatest part  
of all men, bothe openly and priuately was that it hap  
pened unto the Romaynes people to haue a me-este  
and gentle Emperour. Wherat the men of armes in  
the Cyte appoynted unto h[im] Emperours Gardes, gre  
tely grudged. For being reduced from excozions, un  
to a modeste behauoir of lyfe, and reckenyng for theyr  
owne shame, that meke and ryngle gouernance, as by  
the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lycence to  
be taken away, they determyned no leger to sustayne  
suche a gouernor. Wherfore in the beginnyng they  
bare themselfes more stubburne and lesse obediente to  
his commaundement. Finally when he had regnyed  
scarsely two full monethes, (having then shewed per  
fecte profe of his goodnes) and all men beyng erected  
into a singuler hope) sodeynly a pernicious happe en  
uyenge

## The seconde booke.

Fol. xx.

uyenge it, bitterly destroyed all thinges. So that hys  
notable begynninges and enterpryses (whiche were  
lyke greatly to profyte all men) perissched in the myd  
des of their course. For syke of all he adiuged all  
lande that was vntilled and vnooccupied, eyther in I  
talie or any other place, and what soever was vacant  
in the tyme of Kynges, unto the tyllers and labozers  
therof, unto whome also he gaue tenne yeres freedom  
from Taxes, and perpetuall libertye. Neyther would  
he suffer his owne name, to be writte in Chempours  
possessions, savyng they were not Chempours, but  
common unto the Romaynes. He remyted also all  
trybutes, the whiche Tyrantus had intented to get  
money in the Kynges of Kyngers, in the haunes of Ci  
ties, and by common wayes and by patches, and resto  
red them to their aunciente liberties. It seemed also  
that he wold do many other lyke thynges. For he  
had dryuen oute of the Citye all false accusers, & com  
maunded them to be punished wheresoever thei wer  
founde, forseyng that no man shold be troubled throughe  
wronge accusacion. And therfore the Senate and all o  
ther trusted to lyue in greate tranquillytie and blesyd  
estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe so equall unto e  
very man, that he never brought hys Sonne beyng a  
striplyng in yeres, into the Emperours palayce, but  
kept him in a priuate house. So that he wont to schole  
after his accustomed usage, nothinge blyke pryuuate  
children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of  
a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shew forwrds  
any tyrannouse or Imperiall pompe, durvynge the  
tyme that Pertynar lyued. At this modestie of maners  
and lyfe onely the Pretoriane Soldyors reyned, & thinke  
grudginge at the presente condicione of thinges affec  
tione of  
ted their olde sensualitye and lycense, to behaue them the men  
selues violently and to rysle all thynges. And amonge at armes  
their belly bārettes, thei consulted to destroye Pertynar as one combourse unto them, and to sette in hys Empe  
place to rule the Romayne affayres, some other that  
were wylde and wantone, and woulde gyue them be  
rye moche libertye.

G. y.

Wherfore

## The Historie of Herodian.

genealogie unto Aeneas the sonne of Venus and Anchises, and now the second time Cōsull. Who answered Pertynar thus. Truly I, whome of all me your selfe iudge moste worthye, do giue you place in thempyre, and with me al the Senate committeth unto you thole soueraigne auchorite. Than Pertinar beyng almoste constrainned by the earnest prayer of euerie Senatour, and halfe as yet in doubt, ascended the imperiall seate, and spake unto them as foloweth.

**The oration of Pertynar.**  
This your consentte and venygnis accorde of bestowinge vpon me suche ample benefites, amonges so greate a company of noble men, seing it is boide from all suspicion of flatterye, and shewyth manyfayt argumēnte of benevolence and truthe, woulde encourage some manne to take vpon him the thinges proffered. Trusting that he shold with ease gouerne, whyle he myghte perceyue suche gentlenes in you. But in contrarie wise, these weightye charges, as they amase me with perception of this honour, euen so dos they trouble me with great thought and care. For firsste of all in receyving of great benefites, it is harde to rendre the lyke. For in the mutual doing of good turnes, if he that oweþ lycle, restore verye mucche, the facilite of recþencyng is not so muche regarded, as the apparaunce of a gratsfull minde is in hi cōmended. But whan any man doþe first bestowe some greate gyfte vpon an other, if he then little deserue it, he semeth not so mucche to wante wherwith he shold make recompenſe, as him ſelue to be boide of wyte and moſt ungratefull. I perceyue therforze in my mynde howe vn-easy thys prooſe is vnto me, leaſt that by chaunce, I ſhewe my ſelue unworthyp the honour I haue received of you. For the type of dignitie conſylleth not in the perçall ſeate: but in workes which ſhould not abafe þame. And cuen as mucche as we hate thynges paſſed, ſo mucche do we hope well of thinges that are to come. And as the memorie of iuryes is fyred in mynde, (for that whyche hurteth is never forgotten) ſo do be-nefytes ſyde away through the abuſyng of them. For truly libertye deſyreteth not a man ſo mucche as hōdage

## The firſte booke.

Fol. ix.

vage offendethe. Heyther doþe any maſſuſe that he ought to render thankes for vſyng his proper ſubſtaunce after hys owne mynde: (for of ryghe he chalengith that permiffion vnto hym ſelue) but he that is dyspoſed of his goodes, wyl never forgethe the iuriue done vnto him. No man reckeneth that to be his owne lucre whiche he getteth to the commune profytte. For thone thynges that be in commune are lytle regarded of every manne particularly. But yf that whyche is proper vnto a p̄niate manne, do chaunge worke then he lokeþe for, then thynketh he hymſelue not to bee well dealte wythall. Belydes this, they whyche haue accustomed the enormities and unmeaſurable prodigalite of Tirauntes, (þif a manne entendeth his wante of money to lyue thryfelye, and in measurable meane) doo not ſo ſoone attribute it vnto a moderate dyſpence, as thei do reproue him furthwich of ſylythe couetys. Heyther do they esteame any man able to gyue large gyftes, that doþe abſtayne from vþolencie and exortion. But he which diſpēdet his ſubſtaunce well, and accordyng to hys degree, doþe not onely nor take away from any man, but also teacheth others to be frugall, and ſpare that them ſelues gette. Therefor (ryght honoþable fathers) pondeřing theſe thynges in your mindes) endeayr your ſelues together with me, and accompte the admynitraciōn of this Empire to be commune vnto vs. For, ſeyng you haue liue in a weale publicke of good men, and not vnder Tyranny, your ſelues ought to conceaue good hope of thynges, and to promife the ſame vnto others. When Pertinar had ſpoken theſe thinges (hauyng added vnto the Senate a good courage) he was receaued wyth ioſfull ſhoutes and verye honorably enterayned. And hauing vſyted the Tempies of Jupiter and the other Goddes, when the ſacrifysce (accordyng to the aunciente vſage) was ended, he returned into The imperiale Palace. After it was ſpredd abrode what he had eyther in the Senate house ſpoken, or vnto the people wrytten, all men reioyced: truſſinge that they ſhoulde haue him a gentle and gracieouſe þyrne, rather a fa-

O. i. ther

## The historie of Herodian

ther then an Emperour. For he commaunded the me  
of armes, that thei shold herte or oppresse none of the  
people, neyther do iniury to any wavye saring man, & fy  
nally he reduced all thinges to honeste behauoir and

The ma- modestie. Wher he entered or sate in iudgement, he shew  
ers and wed a curteyle countenaunce, and for that he chiesly  
behauoir represented Marcus, he gaue a greate delectacion un  
to the Elders, and the resydue of the people, he easelye  
dewe to loue hym, beyng deliuered from cruell tiran  
nye, and brought into a quiet lyfe. The repoz te hereof  
beyng once farre of diuulged, prouoked all nacids and  
armes, either subiecte or confederate to the Romayne  
people, to gyue deuyne honours unto hym. Pea ys anye  
of the Barbarouse people had forsaken the Romayne  
subiecction, or syrrred any sedicion (throughe feare of  
his prowesse, whyche they did remember he shewed in  
the former warres, and throughe confydence of hys  
iustyce, when thei knew that he willingly offendid no  
man; but gaue prayses unto every man worthye hys  
merites, and that he was vnyde of vpolence and cruel  
tyme of theyr free willes they realded them selues unto  
hym. There came besydes from all partes Ambassa  
dores, to gratysye the people of Rome, that they were  
gouverned by the authoritye of Pertynar. But the  
thing that was most acceptable vnto the greatest part  
e of all men, bothe openly and priuatly was that it hap  
pened unto the Romaynes people to haue a me-  
litle and gentle Emperour. Wherat the men of armes in  
the Cyte appoynted vnto hys Emperours Gard, gre  
tely grudged. For being reduced from excozions, vnto  
a modeste behauoir of lyfe, and reckenyng for theyr  
owne shame, that meke and ryngle gouernauice, as by  
the whiche they perceaued theyr inordinate lycence to  
be taken away, they determyned no leger to sustayne  
suche a gouernor. Wherfore in the begynnyng they  
bare themselfes more stubburne and lesse obedient to  
his commaundement. Finally when he had reygned  
scarsely two full monethes, (hauing then shewed per  
fecte profe of his goodnes) and all men beyng erec  
ted into a singuler hope) soodeynly a pernicicous happe en  
upenge

## The seconde booke

Fol. xx.

avenge st, vterly destroyed all thinges. So that hys  
notable begynninges and enterpryses (whiche were  
lyke greatly to profyte all men) periyded in the my  
des of their course. For syrke of all he adiudged all  
lande that was vntolled and vnooccupied, eyther in I  
talye or any other place, and what soever was vacant  
in the tyme of Kynges, vnto the tyllers and labozer  
therof, vnto whom also he gaue tenne yeres fredome  
from Taxes, and perpetuall lybertye. Neyther would  
he suffre his owne name, to be writte in Chempours  
possessions, sayenge they were not Chempours, but  
common vnto the Romaynes. He remyssed also all  
trybutes, the whiche Tyrantus had intented to get  
money in the Ryuages of Ryuers, in the hanes of Ci  
ties, and by commen wayes and by patches, and resto  
red them to their aunciente lyberties. It seemed also  
that he wold do many other lyke thynges. So he  
had dryuen oute of the Cyte all false accusers, & com  
maunded them to be punished wheresoever thei wer  
founde, forseyng that no man shold be troubled through  
wronge accusacion. And therfore the senate and all o  
ther trusted to lyue in greate tranquillytie and blesyd  
estate of lyfe. For he shewed hym selfe to equall vnto e  
very man, that he never brought hys Sonne beyng a  
strylyng in yeres, into the Emperours palace, but  
kept him in a priuate house. So that he wote to schole  
after his accustomed usage, nothinge vnyke pryuate  
children, and was instructed in all thinges, as one of  
a meane sorte. Neyther dyd he bragge or shew for the  
any tyrannouse or Impetvall pompe, but ryme the  
tyme that Pertynar lyued. At this modestie of maners  
and lyfe onely the Praetoriane Sawldors reyned, & Chas  
grudginge at the pxecente condicione of thinges affec  
tione of  
ted their olde sensualitye and lycense, to behauie them thei  
selues violently and to ryme all thynges. And amonge at armes  
their belly balettes, thei consulted to dessore Pertynar as one combourse vnto them, and to sette in hys Empe  
place to rule the Romayne assayres, some other that roys gard  
were wylde and wantone, and woulde gyue them bes  
rye moche lybertye.

G. y.

Wherfore

### The historie of Herodian

Wherfore esodeynlie (whiles every man was in quiet) they being madde ran in great companies with much hast at noonetide unto the emperours Palayce, wyrh they speares extened and they swordes naked. And at their thither comming, the Chamberers of the Palayce (being astonied with this sodayne matter vntoked for, and being fewe against manye, and naked at gaulse harnessed men) were not able to resisse them. And therfore every man besy hys facion, and rannes dyuerse lyther and thither. But a fewe of the emperours chiefest frendes, hauinge he wed unto Perbynar the flockyng togidher of the Souldiours perswaded him to make shypste for hym selfe by sleinge, and to call vpon the people for ayde. But he (altho he they counselled him profitably) at that presente, thinkyng it a shamefull thyng, vñworthe the emperiall Maiestie, and hys sonn erlyfe, to commite his safarie vnto flighte and corners, determined to preuent the peryll and go furthe amonges them, trusstyng that he should perswade them what he woulde, and mitigate theyr furpons braynes. He wente out of his chamber & metynge the raging Souldioure, enquyred what was the caule of this sodayne sturre, willynge them to cease from so filthy a tumult. And being not ones abashed wyrh the peryll, but retaining a graue countenaunce conuenient to the emperiall Maiestie, nor shewing anything appertaining vnto a supplaunt, he spake these wordes vnto them. Truelye if ye lea me (D Souldiours) neyther do ye artebus anye notable enterpryse, or do me any griefe at all, being of this age & renown. Perbynar knwo lye. But you that are appointed to the charge & custome of youre Prynce, and to remcure perylles from his person, to begin murder your selues, and to defile your handes with bloude, not onely Cixyle, but also of your Emperoure, take heed, I saye, least it be plesantly abominable, and in time to come daungerous vnto your selues. For I haue committed no iniuri or offence agaynst you. If you be sorowfull for the deathe of Commodus, truly it was not I that gaunge for him to

The wor  
des of  
Perby-  
nar  
vñwo  
lve. But  
you that  
are ap-  
pointed  
to the  
charge &  
cu-  
stome  
of youre  
Prynce,  
and to  
remcure  
perylles  
from  
his person,  
to begin  
murder  
your  
selues,  
and to  
defile  
your  
handes  
with  
bloude,  
not onely  
Cixyle,  
but also  
of your  
Emperoure,  
take  
heed, I  
saye,  
least  
it be  
plesantly  
abominable,  
and in  
time to  
come  
daungerous  
vnto  
your  
selues.  
For I  
haue  
committed  
no iniuri  
or offence  
agaynst  
you. If  
you be  
sorowfull  
for the  
deathe  
of  
Commodus,  
truly  
it was  
not I  
that  
gaunge  
for  
him  
to

### The seconde booke.

Fo. xxii.

die, beynge borne a manne. But if you thynke he was slaine by treason, be relyt it was nos my default, beynge one as your selues knowe woyde from all suspiyon. For the thinges that were then committed, your selues knewe syxt, so that if any suspicyon rose, it hapened in others. As for the reste, althoough he be dead, yet wyl I not suffre you to want any thyng that you wil modestly, and mite for your estate wythoute wyolence and extorcyon desyre. By these his wordes some of them were euene then pacified and began to depart, reuerencyng the holynes and age of the prince: but he was of the other wyrh an assaultie slayne. Who (after they had committed this wycked dede) knowyng that the people woulde be dolefull for it, wente streyghte vnto the Campe, and kept them selues within the fortresse, hauing appointed men of armes in y towres to kepe the people from the walles. This end had Perbynar, that was for his lyfe and maners (as we haue before sayde) worthye eternall prayse. When the rumour of this murdre was spred amonges the people, all places were fyllid with tumultes and lamentacions. The people wandered hither and thither, lyke madde men vncertayne what they shoulde doo. They soughe for the Aucthors of the myschiese, whome they could neither fynd, nor be auenged on. But especiallye the Senate were meruaylouse dolefull, repugning their own calamite for y they wated so good a father, and soo meeke a Prynce, and feareyd also tyranny, whiche they knewe to be agreeable vnto the menne of armes. But when a daye or twoo were passed, all the comynynalite throughe euerye mans peculiyer feare remayned in reste. Those that bare anye auctorite, devarted vnto suche Manours as they possessed furthest from the Cytre, leasse that in chosyng a newe Gouvernour some greuouse offences shold be layd to their charge. And h Souldiours (knowyng the people to be in quyer, and no manne remaynyng that woulde reuenge the Prynces deathe) kepte them selues wyrhin theyr Fortresse. And hauyng set vpon the wall one wyrh a verye loude voice

G. iii. they

### Th Historie of Herodian

they proclaymed the Empyre to be sole, sayinge they woulde deluyer it vnto hym that woulde gyue moste money for it, and woulde bryng hym safelyle into the Emperyall Palayce. That Proclamacyon hearde, never moued any man of the Senate that was grante or in auctorizyng neyther anye manne of the noblye eye, or synallye of thole that were ryche, beyng fewe in number, thoughe the tyzanne of Commodus.

Neyther durste anye of them approche vnto the wall to purchase so money so detestable a domynyon. But it was declared vnto one Julianus (who had bene Consull, and was supposed also to haue great aboun-  
dycyon of daunce of money) at nyghte whan he sat at Supper  
Julya-  
nus.  
banquetyng for he was reckened a man of euyll con-  
uersacion. Wherupon his wyfe, hys daughter, and a compayne of Parasytes, perwaded him that leauing hys table he shoulde make hast and knowe what were done. And after in hys goyng they exhorted hym to occupie the boide Emperye, assympyng that he might conuynce all others by gyltes, he was perdyre so pas-  
lyng ryche. Wherefore when he approched nyghe the walles, he cried with a lowde booice that he would giue them what they demaunded, saying he had great abundance of ryches and Chesses full of goulde and siluer. And at the same time one Sulpicianus who hadde also bene Consull, and governoure of the Cy-  
eye, and was fater in lawe to Pertynar, cheapened the Emperye: but the menne of armes suspected in hym his assympyte wyt Pertynar, chynkyng some deceyte to be in it, that he myght thereby auenge the death of Pertynar. Wherefore, hauyng lette downe ladders, they toke Julianus vp vnto the walles, not beyng so bolde as to open the gates vntyll they were accorded of paymente of the money. And he beyng entered the fortresse, syrste of all promyseg that he woulde restore the honoures and Images of Com-  
modus whyche the Senate hadde taken downe, and that he woulde graunte vnts them the same lycence they hadde vnder Commodus, and further, that he woulde gyue vnto euerye Souldyours more money,

then

### The seconde booke.

Fo. xxii.

then they eyther durste desyre or hoped to receyue, neyther shoulde there be anye delave in the paymente: For (as he) it is safely kepte in my house. With which promyse the menne of armes beyng entyed, and trayned wyt great hope, pronounced Julianus they? Prince, and gaue hym the surname of Commodus. Then dysplayinge they? baners (vpon the which they had painted the pycutures of Julianus) they concluded to bryng hym furthe. Wherfore when Sacryfycie (after the blage) was ended, he wente furthe enuyred wyt a greater Garde then other Emperours were accustomed: For hauyng boughte thempyre by bvoieunce agaynst the peoples wyll, and by sylthye shane, w good cause, he feared thinsurrecyon of the Commynalites. But the Souldyours beyng armed and compassed on euerie syde like a cyrcle, that if nede requyred they myghte syghte, take into the myddes of them they? Emperoure, and lyftynge they? Shyldes and Targettes ouer they? heade to be thereby the more safet yf any stones were throwen from the hou-  
ses, they broughte hi into theperours Palayce. None of the peopl durste resyste them, neyther dyd they folowe the Emperoure as they accustomed with ioyful shoutes, but euerys manne cursed hym byterly, re-  
proyng hym for that he hadde purchased thempyre wyt money. Then fyrt of all were the dysposicions of the Souldyours corrupted, then increased the syl-  
thy and insatiable couetyse of money, with contempt of thempyall Maiestye. For when there was no ma-  
remaynyng that woulde reuenge the cruell deathe of the late Prince, neyther anye that woulde wyt-  
hant that sylthye facie of sale and vnhoneste mar-  
chandysse, the same gaue occasion vnto the menne of armes to ware thereafter more vnreverente and re-  
bellynge, in so muche that auaryce and contempte of the Prince daylye encreased euuen vnto deathe. For Julianus hauyng obtainyd thempyre, gaue hym selfe to ryotte, neglectynge the weake publike, and leadyng a naughtye voluptuous lyfe, yea he des-  
reyed the trusse of the Souldyours beynge vnable to

G. iiiij. perfourme

Sulpicy-  
anus.

### Th Historie of Herodian

Performe hys promyses vnto them. For he had nat so  
greate fauour as he bragged of, and the common  
treasure was exhausted by the immoderate dispesces  
of Commodus. For these causes the men of armes on  
the one part detested him. On the other side the people  
not ignorant thereof despised hym. Wherefore they  
pursued him as he passed by with reproche, upbraiding  
hym for hys fylthye and vnstable pleasures, so that o-  
pely in the very Theater vnto the which a great mul-  
titude of men resorte the) thei wold rebuke Julianus,  
and call Pyger y Protector of the Romayne Empire  
and Presidere of the Soueraine principality, prayeng  
hym that he woulde wyth all speade come vnto the  
and delyuer them from those manyfolde injuries. The  
same Pyger had bene Cosill, and then was gouernor  
of all Siria, the whiche was the chieffest dignitye at  
that tyme. For all Phenices and all the Regyous un-  
to the ryuer of Euphrates were vnder hys dominion.  
He was then somwhat stryken in age, and havinge  
bene occupied in many weyghey affayres, had obtay-  
ned the renowne of modestye and ryghteoulnesse, so  
that he seemed to solowe the lyfe of Pertynax. By the  
whiche he chieflly wannte the fauour of the people. For  
which respecte, thei with oftein clamours called vpon  
hym, taunting wyth reproches Julianus beynge pre-  
sent, and extolling wyth prayses and toyfull howtes  
Pyger that was absente. Whereof when Pyger once  
hearde, (trusting that all thinges wold prosper accor-  
dynge to hys desyre (sypnge that Julianus was of the  
men of Armes neglected, as one that had violated hys  
truthe and promyse, and of the people contempned as  
a man not worthy, for that he had purchased hys prin-  
cipalystie) he beganne to hope for the obtayning of the  
Emprise. And syrle he dysmyssed home (some on time  
some an other) diuerse of the Capytaines, Tribunes,  
and other me of Armes, who likewise had knowledge  
of all newes that were brought vnto him from ROME.  
This dyd he to the intent the rumors myghte be spreade  
verye broade in the Caste. For so he supposed to ioyne  
manye vnto him, ys he seemed nat to enterprise the oc-  
cupyeng

Pyger  
called to  
theire.

Syria.  
Pheni-  
ces.  
Euphra-  
tes.

### The seconde boke

To. xxii.

cupyeng of the Emprise by discorde, but to succor them  
that desyred ayde. Wherefore all the people there abou-  
tes came incontinentlye towardes hym euerie man  
by hym selfe, beschyng hym to take the charge of the  
common wealthe furthwyth vpon hym. For the na-  
cid of y Sirians is naturally vnstable and prone vnto  
chaunge of thinges: And thei loued Pyger exceeding-  
ly, for that he behaued hymselfe verye gently amon-  
ges them, delytyng them wyth plesaunte playes and  
iupteouse solempnites. The Sirians are also of their  
owne nature very desyrouse of suche shewes. Amon-  
ges whome the Antiochians (enhabyting a great and  
famous Cyte) do throughoute the hole pere eyther in  
the Citie selfe or elles in the Suburbes, celebrate sea-  
ses and playes. Wherefore in setting furthe shewes  
and solempnytes vnts them, he so wannte their hartes  
that they feruently loued hym. The whiche when Py-  
ger perfectly perceaued, hauing a certayne daye com-  
maunded the men of armes to be presente, and all the  
people commynge togithers, in a hyghe place for that  
purpose erected, he laid vnto them as ensueth.

The o<sup>2</sup>  
peraduenture your selues know howe gentle my dys-  
posiciō hath bene, & how lōge I haue cōsulted or I wet Pyger.  
aboute any weyghey matter, neyther woulde I haue  
come furthe to speke vnto you at this tyme ys I hadde  
bene ledde eyther by myre owne pryuate counsell or  
by assured hope, or elles pitch affection surmountinge  
truste. But the Romaynes call me and with interces-  
sions weary me to stretche my helpyng hāde vnto thē,  
and that I shoulde not per myt so excellente and glo-  
rouse an Emprise leste by our elders to be nowe shame-  
fully destroyed. And as it is a presumpciōne and rathe  
thinge to medell in so weightie affayres without occa-  
sion, so ys a man deny succour vnto thē that wante and  
desyre it, then is he then in the lasche of Cowardise,  
and Treasone. Wherefore for this purpose am I come  
furthe vnto you that I myghte knowe youre aduyse  
what ye judge besste to be done, and that I myghte  
ys you as Counsellors in all thys busynesse. If  
it do prosperously come to passe, the commodityc  
y. i. therof

## Thisstorie of Herodiam

therof shall be comune vnto you and mee : It is no  
final riches that solciste vs, but it is the very Romain  
people, vnto whom the Goddes haue giuen the domi-  
nion of al thinges, and the Romaine Empyre selfe, as  
yet wauering, and to no man certainly establisched.  
The counsayle whiche we enter is assured, ys we con-  
syder the mindes of the luters, no manne being able  
to resyste vs. For they that come from thence, reporte  
that the men of armes the selues of whome he bought  
thempire, are not very faithful vnto him, for y he hath  
not perfourmed his promyse. Let me heare now your  
opinions herein. Whiles he spakethese wordes, furth  
with thole armys and all the common people saluted

**Higer sa-  
luted  
Empe-  
rour.**

him as Emperour and Augustus. And when he was  
clothed wyth Purple and adorned wyth Imperyll  
vesture, beynge there sodaynlye as of purpose founde,  
wyth the syze borne before hym, they conuayed hym  
fyffe vnto the Temples of Antyoche, and then to  
hys owne house. The whyche, as it were not nowe  
priviate, they decked wyth Imperyll signes and or-  
namentes. With those thinges Higer beynge ioyfull  
and perceyuing the mynde of the Romaynes, and be-  
neuolence of al other me towardes him, thought now  
al his purpose to be in perfecte pylght. When y bruite  
of this was blowen abrode, incontinently al nacyons  
that inhabited ouer against Europe, hasted every man  
for him selfe, to proffer him theyz assyltance. And Am-  
**Europe.** bassadors also from al partes came to Antioche vn-  
to hym, as vnto their lawfull prynce. The kinges also  
and the rulers dwelling beyond Euphrates & Tygris,  
sente to gratifye hym, promising theyz ayde in al hys  
enterpryses. The whyche Ambassadors rewarded  
wyth greate gyftes and thankes he dysmyssed, saying  
vnto them, he neded not as at that present anye ayde.  
For his Empyre was wel strengthned, he which he  
wolde wont bloudshed wel gouerne. His mynd being  
thus exalted to great hope, he began to be more negly-  
gent in executing y he shold, deliting hym selfe and y  
people of Antioche vpon pleasures & setting furth of tho-  
sues and playes, neither thought he once of going v-

## The seconde boke.

Fe. xxiii

to Rome, y which should first haue bene done, neither  
certified he the Ilyrian armes (who shoulde chiedys  
haue bene won vnto hi) of these affaires: soz he trusted  
that when they once knew the matter, they would to-  
gether with the Romaines and nacions of the Orien-  
t condiscende vnto him. Whiles he thus little regarded  
his assayres, the same thereof was spred amanges the  
Pannoniens, the Ilyriens, & al the other armes abi-  
ding on the coastes of Danuby & Rhen, for the defece  
of the Romaine Empyre againste the Barbariens. **Danuby**  
Then was gouernour of y Pannoniens (for they wer  
al ruled by one mans authoritie) one named **Seuerus**, **Rhen.**  
of the nacion of Afrique, a man behement & diligent  
In farthering his affaires, accustomed to leade a hard  
& sharpe life prompt in y inuentio, and speedy in the ex-  
ecution of thinges. The whiche being y Romaine Em-  
pire to hang vnseddall, & as it were opened to pillage,  
despised the one Emperour as a fluggyshe cowarde,  
& the other as of no acount. Certaine dreames & Dra-  
cles besides augmented his hope, & other diuinacions  
of thinges to come, the whiche whe they came to effect  
obtained report of veritie: of y whiche hym selfe wrote  
most part in booke of his own life, & published cheym  
openlye painted in Tables. But it behoueth me not to  
ouerpasse wout writing his last dreame, which being  
of greatest weight, brought most hope vnto him. For  
whè it was first told him y Pertinax was made Em-  
perour, Seuerus hauninge ended sacrifice, and beynge  
sworne in obedience to the Prince, assone as he came  
home was take with a dead slepe: In y whiche he drea-  
med that he sawe a great and gorgyouse horse decked  
wyth the Emperours sadell, carvynge Pertinax hym  
selfe through the Citie, by the strete called Sacra via.  
But when he came vnto the entrye of the market place  
(vnto the whiche the people whyleas they were to liber-  
tie accustomed to resorte in greate attemblyes) he comed  
vnto him that y the horse querchrew Pertynax vnto y  
ground, & offering his backe vnto Seuerus standing  
nygh, caried hym throughte the midde of the market  
place, where he was reverenceed of all the people.

**The  
dreams  
of Seu-  
rus.**

## Historie of Herodian

There remayneth in the same place vnto thys day the Image of the same dreame beyng verye greate & made of brasle. After thys sozre Seuerus beyng excolled in mynde, and thynkyng him selfe to be sollicited vnto thempye by diuine prouydence, determinyd to assay the myndes of the Souldours. Wherfore, adioyning

Tribun. syste vnto him the Capytaynes, Tribunes, and the chiefeſt of the menne at armes, in talke with them of the Romayne empyre, sayde it was nygh destroied, no man remaynyng by whome it myghte be valyauntly and prudently gouerned. Inueighyng also agaynst the Pretorian Cohortes, who had detiled their othe of Pictorij allegaunce wylth their Emperours bloude, he sayde the deathe of Pertynar oughte to be reuenged, beyng nothyng ignoraunte that the memorie of Pertinax was fyred yet in the myndes of the Illyrian armes.

For they had by hys guidinge vnder the Emperoure Marcus obtayned many buctozyes againste the Germanynes. And beyng lieuetenant of Illiria he shewed many examples of vertue and prowesse in warre, and exhibited to hys companions muche beneuolence and modestie with a meeke and moderate gouernaunce. Wherfore worshipping the memory of þ prince they grenously grudged that so greate crueltye shouide be done vnto him. Seuerus therfore takyng vnto hi this occasion, led them easely whither he wold, faining þ he affected not thempye, but soughte to reuenge the bloud of Pertynar. And as the me of þ Regyon are of great and tall bodies prompte and redy to warre and murder, so are they of dul and grosse capacitie: where by they do not easely perceyue what a man craftely speketh or worketh. Therfore whē Seuerushad faithfullly promised them to persecute the murde of Pertynar, he so wan al they fauours, that he was named Emperour, and receiued the whole auctority of the. And after he vnderstode the mindes of the Pannoniens, immediately he allured vnto him w̄ giftes the rulers of all the nighe nations þ were subiecte vnto the Romayne Empyre. For Seuerus was þ rediest of all men to faine frendshyppe, to that he passed not to be periured

## The seconde boke.

Fol:xxv.

periured yf neade requyred, awyayes hauynge one thyng in his mouthe, and an other in hys stomacke. Thereforo after he had gotten credite and fauoure by letters with all the Illyrians and Rulers of the Provinces, hauyng gathered toguther Souldours from every parte, and taken vpon him the surname of Pertynar, the whiche he supposed woulde be most acceptable, not onelye vnto the Illyrians, but also vnto all the Romaine people, and hauyng called them all togither into the fielde, he spake vnto them as ensueth. You do euidently shew (Souldours) of what loyalty The oꝝ Religion you are towardeſ the Goddes bi whom ye cion of are sworne and what reuerece ye here vnto your Emperour, whē you do so muche detest the men of armes of þ Citie (being minifters rather of pompe and superfluitie, then of vertue & prowelſe) for that they haue comitted so horrible an offece. And certainly I that am now entring into so great hope (your selues pardie al know how obedient I haue bene vnto Princes) desire to atcheue and bring to effect þ ſhalbe acceptable vnto you: neither to ſuffre the Romaine Empire to runne into ruyne, the whiche being gouerned by our elders w̄ great auctoritie, was reuerenced of all men. And after it fel vnto Commodus, althoughe throughe his fault therof shadowed, partly w̄ the prynces nobilitie & partly w̄ the memorie of his good father. Neither did his vices deserue rather hate then compassion, for we imputed not þ thinges þ were done, so muche vntohi, as vnto þ flattering Parasites & other Counſellers & minifters of vile voluptuousenes, vntill the pire came vnto þ godly olde man, the memory of whol vertue & goodness refeth yet in your myndes, whō nochichſtādinge it was ſo farre from their entent to ſustaine, þ w̄ abominable murver they destroyed him. After hi hath a man(whō I know not) purchased the domption of Sea and lande. And for that acte is hated of the people. Neþher are the men of armes true vnto hym, because he hathe deceyued them. And yf they woulde defende hym, yet are they not in number oꝝ val-

v.113.

### The Historie of Herodian.

valyante prowelte to be compared unto you . Besydes that you haue bene exercysed in warlike assayres . For you are accustomed to fight with the barbarous nations, to suffer al labour, to despyshe heate and colde, to passe ryuerse frozen ouer with yle, to dynke water dygged and not springinge oute of the pearche, and to watche in hunting of wyld beastes : synallye you are furnyshed with all prouispons appertayninge unto valiautnes, so that it is easye for no man to withstande your strengthe . For the man of armes is approued by labour, and not by banqueting and ryotte: with þ whi che thei are so trayed, that thei can not susayne your vycce, muchel lese your syghte . But yf the assayres of Siria seame terryble unto any man, let the same pender howe weake they are and wþt howe symple hope thi be ruled, that they dare not once come furth or consuite of goynge unto the Cyte, but taking those habitations in good warthe, accompte the pleasures euerdave gotten to be the lucre of that unconstant anchortie . As for the nacion of Sirians is chiesly addicted unto iestes and playes . And thei which inhabite Antioch are thoughte principallye to fauour Syri . For the other nacions and Cyties leyng no man wþtynge the Emperour, or that shold modestly and valyantely governe the comon wealthe, at the lasse saigned them selues to obey hym . But yf they ones knewe that an Emperour were created by the Illyrian armee, and hearde therwithall oure name, the whyche is not knownw unto them (for my selfe haue heretofore had dominion ouer them) they wþll not alledge cowardise or flouthe unto vs . Neþher will they abide your innassions or proue your valiaute prowelte especially, seyng they are not comparable unto you, eyther in talnes of person, warlycke exercises, or syghting hðde to hðde . Therfore lette vs with all speade possesse the Cyte of Rom, the verye seate of the Emperour, and then shall we easly bryng to passe the residewe, assyng our selves in the oracles of the Goddess, & in the strength of your weapons & bodys . When Seuerus had spok these wordes unto them they receaued hym wþt ioyfull shoutes

### The seconde boke.

Fo. xxvi.

shoutes and callynge hym Augustus and Pertinax Seuerns promyсл hym their benevolent hartes and myndes. And he thinking it not good to prolonge the time, so Augustus maunded them with all celeritee to be armed, proclai- and Per med his boyage towardes the Cite, gaue unto euerye tinar manne bytyle, and other sufficiene necessaries for their iorney, and remoued with all speade, restinge in no place, nor ones suffring the Souldiors to staye, bryll throughhe theyz greate labour they coulde scarsely fetche breathe . And hym selfe trauylinge wþt the somesete of them, and lodgyng in a simple tente, dyde eate and dyncke of the same the souldours dyd, neuer shewinge anye pompe, or imperyal wantounesse whereby euerye daye he wared more acceptable then other . For seyng he was not onely partaker, but also authoure and heade of all theyz trauyale he became so honourable unto them all, that they seamed moosle gladde to do anye thynge he woulde commande . After he hadde passed Pannonye, and was come unto the mountaines of Italy, preventing so the fame of his approche that he was in open sight, before hys commynge was harde of, a meruaylouse dreade inuaded the Italien Cyties, when they sawe so greate an armee . For the inhabitautes of Italye bvinge of a longe space wþtynge from warre, dyd nowe till theyz lande and lynes in peace . For as longe as the Cytie was free, and that the Capitaynes for the warres were elected by the Senate, the Italien nacions were euer in harmonie . And hanynge subdued the Grecians and Barbarous, gate unto them selues the dominion of Lande and Sea . Neþher was there anye clymate, or parte of the worlde unto the whyche the Romaynes stretched not theyz force . But after that Augustus hadde obtained the Emperour, he released the Italiens from laboure, and toke from them theyz weapons, and retayned wþt hym for appoynted wages onely certayne mercenary souldours to defende the Romayne Emperour . Then compassed he the boundes of hys Emperour wþt the greatnesse of Ryuerse and dyches, wþt hys

B. llii. bryghs

## The Historie of Herodian.

hyghe and sharpe hylles, and wytch deserte places. Wherfore whan they harde that Seuerus was nigh wth so greate an armye, beyng (noe withoute caute) wth that vnaccustomed thyngis astonyed, whan they durst neyther resytle hym, or forbyd hym passage, thei mette hym crowned wth lawrell, and receaued hym into theyz Cytyes, the gates beyng opened. And he abydyng no longer in anye place then luffycyd to do sacryfice and speake vnto the people, hepte on hys iorney towardes Rome. When this was declared vnto Julianus he thought hymselfe vitterly vndonne, he hadde so ostentymes harde of the power and multytude of the Ilyrian armye. For he myscrufted the people of whom he knewe himselfe hated, neyther had he great affiaunce in his garde, because he had deceaved the. Wherfore haungis gathered togither a greate som of money partely of hys owne, and partely of hys fryndes, and what so euer he soude eyther in the temples, or anye other places, he distributed it amonges the Souldours, that thereby he myghte reconcyle theyz fauour. But they althoughe they hadde receaued many ample gyftes, rendred no thankes, intentzyngh their dutie to be nowe paide, and not one beneftise bestowed on them. Furthermore, althoughe the friendes of Julianus perwaded hym to leade furthe an armie, and kepe the straites of the Alpes, (for this Alpes are molte hyghe hylles, wherof the lyke are not in thys Regyon, stretched furthe in the maner of a wall, and compassing all Italy, as thoughe nature so the more felicitie of the countrey hadde addid this one heape, that it myght haue a munpcion unpreignable, stretching from the Northerne vnts the Southerne sea, yet durst he not ones go furthe of the Cyte: But sente vnto the Souldours desiring them to armie and exercepce them selues, and to caste a trench before the Cyte. Hym selfe prepared all apparayle for the warre wthin the Cyte selfe, especially he endeouored to breake the Glephantis (whome he had before ordened for Pompe and triumphe) to suffre litters oþer thyngis that the Allrian Souldours and theyz hys

The  
Alpes.

## The seconde booke.

Fol. xxvii.

ses shold be put in feare wth the sighte and greatness of those belles, whose like thei had never before seane. And all the Cyte was busied wth forging of armure, and makyng of warlycke instrumentes. But whiles the Souldours of Julianus delayed the tyme in apparelling them selues to battayle, newes wer brought that Seuerus was arived euuen at hands. He had sente many of hys Souldours priuily at sundry tynes to Rome, the whiche in the nyght entered the City by divers wayes, hauning couered theyz barnesse wth the habite of Pagans. And now was the aduersarie wth in the City, whiles Julianus dreamed in a maneruncertayne what to doo. The whiche when the people perceaued, eueri man being striken wth feare, & dreading the power of Seuerus they seyned theim selues to take hys parte, despysenge Julianus for that he was a cowarde and fayrer for that he was fowthefull: yet dyd they greatly wonder that Seuerus was then so nyghe at hande. Howe Julianus staggeinge and boyde of Counsell, hauinge fyfte called the Senate togithers, sente letters vnto Seuerus to conclude a peace betwene them taking hym as felowe into the Emperye wth him. But althoughe the Senate had ordeyned all thiese thinges, yet perceauing him to tremble throughe despays of hys safegarde, thei tour ned wholy vnto Seuerus. And two or three dayes after, when they hard that Seuerus was euuen at hâde contemnyng Julianus, they assembled in the Senate house by the commaundement of the Consules: for thei haue the charge of the Romayne aþayres when therre is any doute of the Emperye. And when thei had therre manye tynes messe togithers, consulted what was nedfull to be done, whyles Julianus yet remained in the Pallace lamentynge hys fortune, and bumbly desyryng them, that he myght gyue ouer the Emperye, and religne all hys auctorite vnto Seuerus. But when the Senate perceaued Julianus so feareful, hys Garde astonyed, and hym selfe forsaken of all men, they concluded hys deach, and pronounced Seuerus Emperour. Then they sente Ambassadours

31.

vnto

The Historie of Herodian

Unto hym, wherof some were Magistrates, and some had chieff rule in the Senate, the which should give unto hym al the honours appertayning to Augustus; and the charge of slaynge Julianus, was commyted  
 A Tribu unto one of the Tribunes. The same Tribune murde-  
 ne slewe red the seable and miserable olde man (which had pur-  
 chased unto him with money so wretched an ende) be-  
 yng desolate and abandoned of all persons and ma-  
 kynge buncumly lamentacions. The which when Se-  
 uerus hearde, purposyng in his minde greater mat-  
 ters he toke counsell of apprehendynge all the men of  
 armes which had slayne Pertinax. The which tabzg  
 to passe, he set letters unto the Tribunes Capytaines  
 and centurios exhorting them with many promisses,  
 to perswade the Souldiors of the Cite to be obedient  
 unto hym. And he hym selfe sente commaundementz  
 that leuyinge theyz armure wythin theyz campe, they  
 shoulde come furthe cladelyke peasyble personnes,  
 as they accustomed to goo in Tryumphes, and to ce-  
 lebrat playes. I were alleageaunce unto Seuerus,  
 and conceyving in item selfes a singuler hope, shoulde  
 be ready to folowe their newe Emperour. The Sould-  
 iors beleauynge this throughe the perswasyon of  
 the Trybunes, layed theyz armure aparte, and came  
 fourthe crowned with Lauroll in gorgeouse garmentes.  
 Now when thei came unto the army of Seuerus,  
 he beyng therof aduertysed commaunded, them to re-  
 sorte togithers in the fydle, as though he wold gen-  
 tely welcomne them all. And when they approched the  
 Imperial seate, shoating toysally togithers, thei were  
 all by a wachte worde sodeynly enclosed. For sa haddes  
 Seuerus appointed it that when his souldiors salwe  
 them attenyself herkenyng unto thei Prince, they  
 shoulde enuyzon them all as ys they boore enemyses and  
 wounding, or strikyng no man, wyrh a compasse en-  
 close them rounde about, onely holdyng sourbe their  
 dardes and speares, that the other for feare of woun-  
 des shold not, beyng naked, and selve, presume to re-  
 sylfe those that were armed, & many. Unto whō (whē  
 he had thus taken and entangled them as it were a  
 toyle of weapons) with a highe voice and troubled sp̄

The seconde booke,

Fo. xxviii.

rite, he spake as foloweth, You see that we haue ouer-  
 come you as wel, by aduise, and pollicy, as by strenght. The wo-  
 enumber. Ye are taken mosse easly, & holde without des of des  
 great difficuttie, what shalbe done of you that lie in our vnde-  
 rmy, polver: ye shalde now here prectly as prayes lab. the Pre-  
 tece to our Emperye. If for your mischeuous facte ye rote & soule  
 feake codigne punyshmet, ye shall never finde it. You diours,  
 haue slayn a godly olde ma and worthy Emperour  
 whō your selfes shold haue preserued & defended. You  
 haue filthely & shamefully, as it were the possession of  
 a private person, & as filthy bslurers, sole y Romaine  
 Empire shinen w perpetual glorie, the which our el-  
 ders ruled w vertue & renowme. And that more is, as  
 mosse timorous & cowardly dastardes, you durst not  
 ones desede & succor him, whō after that sort, your sel-  
 mes erected unto the type of dignitie. For thise your  
 heynous offeces & horrible wickednes, a thousande ro-  
 mites of death are due unto you, ys a ma wylde study  
 for a mete rewarde unto your deserfes. Wherefore  
 what you are worthy to suffre your selfes apparantly  
 perceane. Neuerthelesse, I wil abstaine fro weding of  
 bloode, not folowig your hādes. But because law, & e-  
 quicie prohibith you to garde a Prince, having vi-  
 olated your othe, & defiled your hādes w ciuite & Impe-  
 rial blode, in falseking your allegiaunce & truch, albeit  
 of our bouteouse clemecye we pardō you your lyues,  
 & yet do I charge my Souldiors, y thei vngirde you, &  
 after thei haue dispoiled you fro your armure, thei let  
 you go naked, your selfes I comand to depart far hecc  
 And furder I ordene, swere, & denouice, y if any of you  
 be fonside hereafter win a hūdred miles of the Cite, he  
 shal lose his lyfe. Incōtinently after this sentence pro-  
 nounced, the Illiriā Souldiors ran unto the, & after  
 thei had bereaved fro the their shōrt skeles decked w  
 golde & siluer, (which thei ware for proude pompe and  
 bragging brauerie) & taking fro the by violence theyz  
 purles with their other apparaile & toakes of warriors  
 thei dismissed them so risteled of al thei had. Thei being  
 theselves thus betrayed, & by crasch disceite so apprehe-  
 ded, toke their fortune pacifcl. For what shold thei do,  
 being naked against armed, and selve against manye

The Historie of Herodian

They departed therefore bewailyng them selues, and interpreting the release of theyz lyues a greate good turne bestowed vpon them. But yet they lamented that thei came surthe unarmid, and so offred them selues to be shamefullly taken. Powe Seuerus bled an other wyle agaynste them. For (fearynge that they be wyng naked and spoilt, wold in a desperacio retorne vnto their campe, and fall to harnes) he sente the stro-  
gesse and moste experie of all hys Souldours by other wayes and pathes: commaundyng theym to enter into the voyde tentes, and sealynge on the armure there leste, to forbidde them thentry when thei retourned. This punyshment therfore had the murdereris of Pertinar. Then Seuerus with the rest of hys hostis apparaled with armure wente vnto Rome. The Ro-  
maines were at the syrste lyghte affoynd, and dreaf-  
full, psondryng in theyz myndes hys stoutenes and  
fortune. The Senate and all the people crownd with Lawrell receaued hym (as the syrste of all menne and Emperours) bringer to passe of so great and weighty  
a matter withoute bloudeshedde or busy trouble. All  
qualties besydes were meruaylouse in hym: specially  
the shapnes of his wytte, his suffraunce of laboure,  
and prompte audacite of good hope in enterprysyng  
of weightie assayres. After the people had receaued  
him with soyouse acclamacions, and the hole senate  
welcommed hym at the gates of the Cyte, he byseted  
the temple of Iupiter, made there his sacrifice and sa-  
luted the other Temples, and then entred into the im-  
perial palayce. The next day, he came into the Coode:  
where he made an oracio with a good countenaunce,  
and embazed al menne openly and priuily, sayeng he  
came vnto the City to reuenge the death of Pertinar.  
And promyssed to erecte the fundacions of the estate of  
Emperour. That no man shoulde lose his life, or good-  
es, excepte he were by iudgemente condemned: all  
pykethankes and false promyters beyng dyspatched a-  
way. And that he would folow Marcus steppes in go-  
verning the Empyre: having not onely the surname

180

The seconde booke

Fo. xxix

he had of Pertinar, but also his full mynde intent. By this talk he wan hym selfe muche fauour. But many of the auncyent men, knowyng his accustomed subtylty, tolde theyz frendes pryuelye, that he was a deceyfull man, bente unto fraude, and a meat dissem-  
bler, caring for nothing, so that he might obtain that he thoughte his owne auantage. The whiche reporte of the Elders experiance dyd afterwarde verifie. Se-  
uerus then remayned but a fewe dayes in the Cyte: but hauyng bestowed on the people many gyftes, and aboundingly rewarded the Souldours; amongest whome he elected the strongest and valyanteste into theyz places (that were erthe dyscharged) for the garde of hys person, he furthwyth prepared hys journey to-  
wardes the Drent, whiles Pyger lay styll and gaue hys mynde vnto the wantonnes of Antyoche. Thin-  
kyng it beste to make hast that (beyng vnloked for) he myght oppresse Pyger vnpuruaied of strengthe to res-  
yste hym. Wherefore he comauanded the Souldours The pre-  
to make them selues ready, and after he had gathered paracyo-  
togither bandes of men from euerys coaste, mustered of Seue-  
rus a-  
ll the youthe in Italpe, sente for the residue of the Il-  
lyrian armie remaining in Thrace, and with no lesse gaynste  
dylygence gotten a great navye and fylled all the Ita-  
lian galleyes of. in. orders wyth Souldours armed, Pyger.  
Thrase. he brought to gyther wyth incredyble celerytie abou-  
daunce of al necessaries. For he knew well that there  
neded a great power agaynst h naciōs, inhabytyng h Europe,  
parte of the earthe that is oppposite vnto Europe: all  
the whyche dyd wyth one mynde folowe and fauour  
Pyger. Thereforo after thys sorte dyd Seuerus ap-  
parayle hys armie to the warre. But the man, beyng  
prouydent & of a forecaslyng wytte, suspected muche  
the armie of Englande, who were verye myghtye,  
and warrelyke, and of them was ruler one Albinus,  
a manne of the ordre of Senatours, whyche had bene Albinus  
traded in greate wealth of all richesse and pleasures.  
Thys man Seuerus thoughte good to wynne by craft  
vnto hym, least of the same, syred wyth hys ryches,  
3. iii. kynged

### The historie of Herodian

bynred, armye and renowme (all prompte prouacaytions to couetynge of thempye) woulde chalenge the domynyon of all thynges vnto hym selfe; and whyle he Seuerus were blyved wþth the warres in the Oþrente, take possesyon of Rome, not farre dysstaunte from Englannde. And therfore he determined to allore vnto hym wþth a colours of honoure, Albynus beyng syngle, lyghte of credyte, and beleuyng he Seuerus, for that in hys letters myllynes he protested all thyng by solempne orthe. Therfore calling hym Cesar, and prouisynge hym the partycypacyon of hys Empyre, he preuented hys ambycyon. He sente lettres also vnto hym full of gentle commendacyons, wherby he desyred hym chedly to take vpon hym the charge of thempye, sayinge that it neaded suche a noble manne, and of suche dyscreate age as he was. Hym selfe (he sayde) was olde and heredit the gowte, and hys twoo sonnes verye yonge. The whyche Albynus credytyng, accepted gladlye the honoure: beyng toyfull that he obtained hys desyre wþthoute batayle or other trouble. And Seuerus (that al thynges myghte leame more credyble,) sente lettres of lyke tenor vnto the Senate: commandyng the moneye to be coyned wþth the stamp of Albynus picture, hys Image to be erected, and other honoures to be done vnto hym, wherby he establisshed the trusse of hys benevolence. When he hadde thus prouidently synylshed thys dryste (beyng oute of feare of the assayres in Englannde, and hauynge gathered togyther aboute hym the Illyrian Legyons and all other thynges nedefull) he dyd set forewarde hys hoste agaynst Nyger. As for the places where in hys Journey he arrested, what Dracyons he made in eþre Cypte, what meruaplosse wonders appered, what Regyons he passed, and fynallye what conßuctes there were, and what numbers on boþe sides were slayne, the same all Hystorographers, especyalley the Poetes treatyng of thys matter, and the whole lyfe of Seuerus, do verye plenteously make mencyon

### The seconde booke.

Fo. xxx,

mentyon of in theyr wrytes. But I entende to put in wþþynge thynges marþestlye knownen vnto me, done by the space of seuentye yeares vnder manye and dyuersle Princes. And therfore  
I wyll touche the chyfesse thynges done  
by Seuerus: wþþoute or lauour  
saynynge anye thyng (as I  
le they haue done whyche  
wrote in that age) oþ  
elles ouerlyppe  
vnspeken  
anye thyng that shall  
seeme wþþyre  
memor  
rye.

### The eande of the Secunde booke of Herodian.

LXXX.

The

## C The Argumente of the thyrd booke of Herodiam.

**H**E begynnyng of the Thyrd booke dothe crete of the batailes betwene Seuerus and Piger, and of the preparacion of the same. Then after of the deathe of Piger, of the crueltye of Seuerus which would by treason hau Albynus, whome he had taken into the rule of them syze. Consequentye of the ouerthowe of Albynus men, and Albynus owne death. Of the byage and exedycyon made by Seuerus into the Orient, of tham bycyon of Plautianus and hys death. After that the dyscorde betwene the twoo brethren Seuerus sonnes, and of the viage made by Seuerus wryth his Sonnes into England, where he died. And the eande of the Thyrd booke treateth of Antonius, Seuerus eldeste Sonnes cruytpe, and howe he fayned for a while to be agreed with hys brother Ge  
ra. C. D

C The



**S**o the Wooke preceedyng we haue at length openid the deathe of Pertinax, the murder of Julianus, with the comming of Seuerus into the Cytie, and his expidicion agaistre Piger. who (when he suspected no liche mater) hearyngs that Seuerus was in full possession of Rome, taken as Emperour by the Senate, and that the hole Illyrian armie was commyng against hym by lande and sea, had hys mynde wonderfullye troubled, and hys courage meruaylosely daunted. Neuerthelesse he gaue farrwith commandement to the Presidents, and rulers of the Provinces, to defende and stoppe all their passages, haunes. Parthia and Stretyes: And sente to the Kynges of Parthia, Armenia, and Acrenia, for ayde. But the Armenians King Acrenta, answered that he woulde take neyther parte, but onely defende hys Realme, & the comming of Seuerus. The Parthian Kyng, hat him worde, that he wolde commaunde by commyng on the nobles of his Realme, to mister and gather thair pouers togythers: For so was he accustomed whiche he shoulde make warre, because the Parthians had no mercenary Souldiours, or appoynted armie. And the Acrenians were sent hym for ayde certayne barchers, by the Kynges Barke Barke, the whiche then signed in that Realme. The rest of his power, he listied of the Sowldiours that were present, and many he gathered amonges the people, especially of the Amiochians (who beyngh through the lightnes of their age, and the laus of Piger stured) dyd more rashely, then prudently, proffer them selfes

B. I. selues

## Thistorie of Herodian

**Taurus** selues. Niger then stopped with a myghty municion, and strunge wall, the streites, and broke places of the mountaine Taurus: thinking that the same rocke and steape Hyll, wolde be an assured strunge defence vnto the Driente. For Taurus riseng in great heighth

**Cappado** betwene Cappadocia, and Cilicia, dothe denye the  
**Cilicie** nacions, inhabitinge the Septentrion, and the Driente. He set also a Garriso in Byzantium, which was

**Byzanti-** the goodlyest Cite of all Thrace, and at that tyme flo-  
**um.** rising with strengthe and rychesse. For beyng sett

**Thrace.** in a narowe gulle of the See Propontis, it receaved tribute, and sythe from the water, and posseslynge on the other syde large and fruytfull syeldes, gate lucre

**Propon-** by both these Elenites. And therfore Niger thought it best to strengthe this towne, that the shippes migh be prohibited passage thoghē those streyghtes out of Europe into Asye. This Cite was compassed with a

**Nileum** frōge and myghty wall, builded of four square stonye of Nileum, with so small and streight ioyntes, that a man would not judge it of many pieces, but all of one continuall stonye. And ys a man behelde the ruyn at this present remainyng, he would wonder, eyther at the arte of them whiche synte builded it, or at the strengthe of them whiche destroyed it. After this soore therefore, dyd Niger oder hys assayres, wth verye ware, (as he supposed) and circumspecte counsell. Seuerus on the other part, made all the hast that myght

be, with his armpe and prouisio, resting in no place. And hearyng that Byzantium was fortifyed wth a garrison of Souldours, and knowyng it also to be a verye strunge towne, he tourped vnto Cyzicun.

**Cyzicu** When this was declared vnto Demilianus he gouernour of Asye, vnto whome Niger had committed the charge and chiese rule of the warre, he remoued vnto Cyzicun also, leadinge wth hym all the Legions, whiche eyther Niger hadde sente, s; hymselfe mustred. When it came to strokes, after certayne skirmishes egerly foughte, the victorie syually fell to Seuerus: and all the hoste of Niger was slayne, and putte to flyghte. Wherby the hartes of Dicentall enabyl-

tantes

## The thyrd boke

To, xxxiiij.

tantes were abated, and the Illyrians verye muchs encoraged. Many ther were, that thought Niger to be in the beginning of the batayle betrapt by Demilianus. And soz proueso of their opinion, some of them sayde that he enyued Niger, disdaininge that he, who a lytle before was hys succellour in Syrie, shold now not onely be hys superior, but also hys Soueraygne, and Emperour. Other saye that hys chyldyn (whom Seuerus syndyng in Rome, helde hys custody) perswaded him by letters to regardē their life and safetie. For this circumspēcte Counsell dyd Seuerus put also in vze. It was the usage of Commodus, to deteyne with him, the chyldyn of thone whiche had the charge to gouerne the prouinces, as pledges of their faulth allegiaunce and loyaltye. And therfore Seuerus, as soone as he was made Emperour, (whyles Iulianus yet lyued) sente certayne into the Cite to steale priuely hys chyldyn, leste they shoulde be in anye other mans custodye. And as soone also as he entered into Rome, he caused to be apprecheded all the chyldyn of the Capitaines, and of all other whiche bare any comynen offyce in all the Driente, and Asye, to the ende, that by thone Hostages, he myghte cause the Chiueitans of Niger, for the sauergarde of their children, to betraye thei master: o; elles, ys thei remayned faulth, it myghte lye in hys power, to auenge hys anger against them in slayng of thei chyldyn. Nowe Nigers Souldours beyng dyscomfyted at Cyzicum, fledde, euery manne as faste as he could: some esca- pyng by the Mountaines of Armenia, and some co- uetyng to passe Gallias into Asye, & Gallatias, that they myghte put them synges in places of munition. Then marched the Armea of Seuerus by the plaines of Cizicum, into Bithinia the nexte region. But whan the same was spredd, that Seuerus hadde the viceorie, a sodayne sedis, invaded the Cyties there abouete, not so moche throughē anye hatred, or ayp- tye, they bare vnto the Emperors, as throughē mox- tal contencion amonge them selues.

Armea.

**Taurus**  
**Asye.**

Gallatias

Bithi-

nia.

The

2. 3.

### Thistorie of Herodiu

The same was an olde accusstmed vice of f Grecas, who whyles they were at dyscencion wþin them selues, and endeoured to destroy every man that excelled in dignite, had nowe consumed all Grece. And being within the selues worse and wasted, were first made Captvues and slaves vnto the Macedons, and after the bondemen and djudges of the Romaynes. That pessiferouse calamitie of debate and discencion, thered notable and florishing Cyties in our tyme. For immediatly after the battayle at Cizicum in Wythinia, the Nicomedians revolte vnto Seuerus, seding hym Ambassadours, to promple hym they woulde receave his armie, and submytte them selues vnto hys gouernaunce. On the other syde, the Pycians stirred tertayning hys Souldiors, as well those whiche were escaped from the fynelde, as them whiche he had sent to defede Wythinia. Out of these Cities, the Souldiers, as oute of their Campes, encountred, and skyrmished togithers: and after a greate battayle foughthen, Seuerus obtayned the upper hande. The Souldiors of Pyger beyng from thence also dryue, fledde vnto the streaptes of Tauris, and defended the enclosed muntions. But Pyger, (leaving there as greate a Carryson, as he thoughte nedefull) went him selfe vnto Antioche, to leuye an other hoooste of men, and more men. In this whyle the Arme of Seuerus departed oute of Wythinia and Galacie, entred into Cappadocia, and beganne to assaulte the Bulwarkes, and muntions there. Where they were wþth many sorowes, and labours afflicted, the waye beyng verye narowe, and sharpe, and they which stode aboue, thowing stones, and mosse fyerly syghtinge, and by that meanes fewe kepyng backe a greate number. For the passage is wonderfull strayne, whereof the one syde is fortfyed wþth a huge and hyghe Rocke, and the other is full of waters, falling verye swystely downe from the steape hilles. And Pyger had besydes strengthened it with a mighty and fronge wall, that therby, hys enemy my myghte on every syde be forþdden entry.

In

### The thirde boke.

Fo. xxxiii.

In the meane tym, whyles these thynges were in doyng in Cappadocia, the sedicion of certayne Cyptes, began to styrre wþth like dyscord. That is to wete, the Cypte of Laodician Syria, abhorring the Anti-Laodiciens, and the Cite of Tyre in Phenicia, detesting cra. the Werinthians. Thaywhch twoo Cyptes hearyng Syria. of Pygers dyscofutur stroke downe all his honours, & Tyrus Images, & made ioyful acclamacions vnto Seuerus, Phen wherof when Niger, byng busye at Antyoche, was cra. certified, albeit he were at other tymes of a meeke nature, and gentle dyspoicyon, yet beyng iustly moued with their untrouth and ceulote, he sent vnto bothe the Cities, all the Mauritanian Slynghers that were in hys seruyce, and wþth hem a compayne of archers, whome he comaunded to slea every one they encountrid, and to destroy and burne the Cyptes selues. And truely, the Goozes (being a racyon naturally fierce, and cruell, couetyng sligghter, sturdy in enterpises, and lyke me desperate despising all daunger of death) dyd soleynly oppresse the Laodicians: and (haunyng tormented the people ther wþth all kynde of cruelty, and ransaked the Cypte) departed from thence vnto Tyre. The whiche (after they had despoiled euery man of his substance, and comytted muche murdere) they wholly burned and rased to the earth. Whyles these cruell actes were thus executed in Syria, and whyles Niger was busied in waging and mustering an other armie, Seuerus Souldiors besyged the munycyon of the mountayne Tauris: beyng verye pensyfe, and wþthout hope of byctoze, for that it was by it selfe myghte and inþvegnable, and defended also wþth the steape & hygh hill. But when they were nowe wearyed, and theyz enemyes resyngne in safetyp, soleynly loo in the nyghte powred downe vehement shoures, whiche fylled all places with snow and rayne, (as commone in Cappadocia the winter is very roughe and tempestuous, chiedly at the mountayne Tauris: wherby sodayn brooke brast furþ wþth a meruaylous troublesome streme, and beyng letted from hysr ryghte course (or the minutyon stop-

B. iii.

ped

## The thirde boke.

mayned on bothe sydes aboute eueninge tyde, readye thene to the batayle. And thay passed over the nyght in hope, Seuerus and feare, wþout reþe or sleape. And at the Sonne & Pyger. ryþinge, the Capytaynes on eyther syde haþinge enþoured theyr Souldours, ran togithir with an incredibl stoutesnes, as though in that tynall batayle, they woulde ende the este of theyr hope and feare (for tyme at that seasoþ arbitratyng who shoulde be Emperour of Rome. When they had of longe space syversely foughten, there was so greate slaughter commyted, that the riuers flowing alonge by the plaine, did run into the Sea with greter aboundinge of bloud, ths of water. Finally the Drentalles were overthowen and discomfited, & the Illirians pursued them at their backes so nyghe, that many of them beþng wounded, were drenched in the Sea. The other fledde into ths high hilles. nighe at hande, where they were by þ pursuers slaine, and with hem a great numbre of rurall people, who came togither out of the nexte Cityes and Villages, to beholde the batayle from abone, as from a lufe holde and stronge Fortresse. But Pyger hym selfe escaped from he fylde vpon a swifte Courser vnto Antyoche, from whence also, (despayrynge of all good successe,) and leyng the people amased and runnyng to and fro, lamentynge wþt hawlynges and teares, the deathe of theyr breþerne and chylderne he furþwþt fledde. And beþng hidden in a certayn village of thosam Region, was there soud by the horsemen, and beheaded. This ende of life had Pyger, receyving wþtly reward for his delayes, and of Pyger protracting of time. A man (as they say) in other thyn ges very moderate & vyȝt. After Pyger was slain, Seuerus incōtinently did put to death all his frendes which either of their own free willes, or by constraint, had fauored him: onely he pardoned the Souldours, who through feare of Seuerus wrach, were fled ouer Tigre, vnto the Barbariens. And inde to the was Tigria, a great multitude escapaþ. Wherby it came to passe þ the barbarous nacions v̄o thence forwarde, wared v̄iȝe valiant, & stronge in fight against þ Romaines, beþng

**Siclus  
Sinus.  
Theatre**

**Darius.  
Aleander**

**Alexan-  
dria.**

**The bat-  
tle place,** but theyr fortune was also lyke. For they re-

þed hys passage) it waxed more huge & violent, so that when the wall (nature ouercomminge arte) could not sustayne so myghtye a brunts, the ioyntes beyng by lytle and lytle loused, and the soundacyons from their places remoued, þ streame made to it selfe open way. Then the garrylon, whyche garded the entrye, ones that perceyued, dreadyng least they shoulde be by their enemyes enclosed, (no stays or defensioþ to the contrarie remayning, alioone as the water were assayed) they forsoke theyr stacions, and made lyfþ for them selues by flight. Then the Seuerian Souldours resyoyed, and hartened them selues, as though he thym mortall Goddes guyded them. And knowing that the place was of theyr enemyes abandoned, they easelyle wþtouþte resistance passed ouer Taurus, and entred into Cilicia. Pyger hearynge hereof, haþinge leuyed an huge armie, (but yet not skylfull of warlike traueyle) made greate hast towardes them by long iourneyes, a wonderfull multytude of men, and almost al the youthe of Antyoche, folowing him as their generall gouernour, and pryncipall Capytayne, wþt muche myþte, but noþyng comparable vnto the Illyrian Souldours, eyther in prowesse, or knowledges of warfare. In this araye they arived nyghe vnto a place named Sinus Siclus, in a myghtye and larg playne, the whiche beþng on euerþ syde emuþored wþt hyghe mountaynes in fourme lyke a Theatre, hadde a steepy banke, extendyng farre alonge by the Sea, as it were a fylde, fallyng by nature conueniente to darreigne batayle in. Beaþ the report is, that in the same place, at a cruell and very bloody batayle, Darius was by Aleander vanquished, and taken, (thenhabitantes of the Septentrion then preuaylyng against the nacions of thorient. There remaineth at this day, as a token & witness of the same victory, the Cittie of Aleanderia, situate vpon an high hylþerby, and a brasen Image of Aleander, by whome the Cittie is so named. It chanced besides, that not onely the myȝtige of Seuerus and Pygers armies in that batayle beþng,

The Historie of Herodian.

beyng onely expert before to shote wylth the bowe wth  
thei horses, not apparayled in harness, or bolde to  
fyghte wylth speare, and sworde, but couered wylth  
lyghte, and longe garmentes, they did most common-  
lye throwe thei darter, and shote thei arrowes in  
fleyng awaye. But after that many of the Romayne  
Souldours, and Arctysciers, came to inhabyte and  
leade thei lynes in those Regyons, the barbarous  
people learned, not onely to weare armure, but also  
to forge, and make the same. When Seuerus had sy-  
nysched hys assayres in the Dystente, according to his  
owne mynd, he toke an ardente desyre to make warre  
vpon the Armenian kynge, & to conquer the Realme  
of Parthia: bothe the whiche Syger had before allo-  
cated vnto hym. But yet deserryng those warres  
vntyll an other tyme, he bega to invent by what mea-  
nes he myght assuredly establishe the Romayne Em-  
pyre to hym selfe and hys chyldryen. For, Syger being  
dispatched, there remained no more, sauing onely Al-  
bynus, who he reckened woulde do lytle after his  
mynde, or stonde hym in small steade, the rumour be-  
yng alreadye spredde, that he blurped the dignytie, &  
name of Cesar, ouer arrogantlye: and that manye of  
the Senators had wrytten pnyuelle vnto hym, encou-  
ragyng hym to retourne to Rome, whyles Seuerus  
were absente and busyed in the Dystente: for all the no-  
blytye wryshed Albynus Emperour, because he was  
descended of noble and famouse lygnage, him selfe be-  
yng a yonge man of great towardnes, and gentle dis-  
polycyon. All whiche ententes when Seuerus knew,  
thynkyng it not good to worke wylth open enmytie,  
and manysche warre, (hauyng none occasion that  
myghte seme honest therunto) he determinyd to cy-  
cumuente hym wylth preuy treason, and close deceit.  
Wherefore he sente wylth letters of Commision, vnto  
Albynus, certayne of the mosie trusste and faythe-  
full Purseuautes, whiche vsed to carue themperiall  
letters: whome he comauanded, that hauyng dely-  
uered those lettres vnto hym, they shold say they had  
other secrete matters to declare, so that al other were  
comauanded

Albynus.

The thyrde booke.

Fo. XXXV.

comauanded to ausidaunce. And then getinge hym  
from his garde, thei shold sodeinly murder hym.  
He delyuered poysone also vnto them, wherwith they  
should ysse it were possible) allure his taster, eyther of  
meate, or drincke, to dyspatche him. But Seuerus  
truthe was suspected of Albynus frendes. And there-  
fore thei admonyshed hym to beware of that false and  
dellovall person, full of disceit, & treason. For he was  
manifessly knownen to be a periured, and untrue man:  
hauing by their owne childeyne, entyded Pigers Ca-  
pitaynes, to betray their maister: And then, after he  
had abused their labour, and brought all hys purpose  
as he wold) to pisse, thame bothe them and thei chil-  
dene. Wherefore hym actes them selues made appa-  
raunte hys vnsyfthful, and nougthy dysposycyon.  
And soz that caule Albynus strengthened hym selfe  
with a greater and stronger garde then he was accu-  
stomed, permitting no messenger sent from Seuerus  
to be lete in rashely vnto hym, except he synte laide a  
syde his weapon, and were throughly serched. Now  
when the pursuautes were arriued from Seuerus,  
and hauyng openly desiered their letters, sayd that  
they had other secrete instructions, to vter pituelys  
vnto hym, Albynus incontinenly suspecting the ma-  
ister, caused them to be apprehended: And then by seve-  
rall examinacions hauyng founde out the truth, and  
by order perceyued the hole treason, caused execu-  
tion oute of hande to be done vpon the offenders. And  
prepared hym selfe agaist Seuerus, as his apparet  
enemye. The whiche thinge when Seuerus knew,  
beyng a man of wrathfull, and cruell nature, he re-  
solved, to hynde no lenger the desperte and hatred he  
bare to Albynus. Wherefore he called the hole armis  
togithers, and made the oracion vnto them.

**C**o man oughte to embayde me of ouer moche  
lyghtnes, for that I haue heretofore done, neyther ac-  
compte me false, and vngratefull towarde hym whos  
Seuerus. I reputed for my frende. I haue performed all thy-  
nges. Bea I haue receyved hym into the secrete of my  
dominion, beynge now moche perclipe establisched  
L. L. the

## The Historie of Herodian

the which thing a man wylle scarselye doo to his owne brother. And that whiche you haue vnto me onely deuyered, the same haue I with hym participated. But all thiese our bountefull benefites, hath Albinus moste shamefully recompensed, contempnyng our powlesse, forgetting his allegiaunce, and conueyngge with perill, the hole rule, wherof he myght haue bene partaker without batayle, or contencion. He feareth not y Goddes by whō he hath so ofte sworne. Neither dothe he consyder, or fausure your labozious travayles, whyche you haue wyt so greate rehowne and gloriye for our sake sustayned. And assuredly, him selfe wanted not the profites of our successes: Pea hadde he obserued his fidelice, the gretest poxion had ben his. And as a man, ys he be authour of myschiese, shall be accompted vnryghteous, so ys he reuenge nat the injurye receyued, he shalbe esteemed a coward. When we made warre agaynst Niger, we had not so iuste and lawfull causes of anger, bicause we hated him, not, as a bereuer, and robber of the pyre, for the same urfysse, eyther of vs affected, and dwele vnto him selfe with equall enclosure. But Albinus, neglecting hys loyaulty, allegiaunce, and othe, after he hath obtained by our large liberalitee, the honours whiche are ones, ye geuen to our lawfull children, had rather become our noysome emp̄, thē our fredely familiar. Wherefoze, as we bewtifyd hym with our manyfolde benefites of honour, and glory, evē so, let vs nowe wyt hys force, and strength, conuince, and daunte, hys traytorous, and feable harte. As for tharmy of that small Ilande, is not able to suffayne or abyde the brunte of your myght. For seyngē ye haue youre selfes almoste alone, by your owne valyaunt powlesse, subdued the hole orient, whe wold doute, but at this preset through the ioyning of so great power (soz here is welnye the hole Romaynē armis) you would not ouerthow and put to flyghte so smal a number, who hathe serued pitallise: soz who is ypraye you ignoraunte of his vnglououse

## The thyrde booke.

To, xxxvi,

luptuous lyse, more greable to Heardes of Swine, thē to Legiōs of Soulđors. Let vs therfore valiantly set forward against hym, w̄ the stoutenes we haue accustomed, affiengē our selues in the Goddes, (so wickeidly by hym cōtempred) as principall guides of ours boyage, and myndes of the victorious signes by vs heretofore erected, the whiche he hath also utterly despised. Whē Seuerus had this moch spokē, incōinēly thole atme pronounced Albynus their commune enemy: And hauing received Seuerus w̄ ioyful acclamacions, & shewed by theyr shoutes their good willes towardes hym, thei entreated y mā w̄ an inestimable hope added to his enterprise. Wherefore, after he had liberally distributed a boches the Soulđors grete giftes, he led the al fayvales against Albinus: hauninge set also a crewe of mē auxiliē & rale Bizātium, which Bīzants was yet shut after the receipt of Nigers Soulđours, unclene. The whiche Citie being at legh by sumpue cōquered, destroyed & defaced, the Theater, the hote bathes, & al other goodly buildinges therof verily destroied, & it selfe reduced into y forme of a vilage, was giue vnto the Perin Perinthi thias, as Antioche was vnto the Laodicias. Then he ans̄ exacted grete somes of money, to repayze the Cityes, which the Nigriā Soulđors had batered & despoiled. Hym selfe cōtinued his tōney woute intermissiō, nor greily regarding y hōle daies, or any patnefull laboz. For he was equally paſt of colde & heate, trauailing ofte times bareheaded, vper y highe & craggy mountaines, in the bytter & hanqe winter, when the snow fell continually out of y skie. Therby he stirred his Soulđors, as with his owne ſāple, vnto alacrity of minde, andufferaunce of laboz, vse trauailes. For thei were not cōſtrained to abide those paines thrugh anſearc, or ſtraite law, & cōmaungement, but rather thrugh a certaine emulaciō, & example of their Prince. He ſent certayne also beforē to take the ſtreites of the Alpes, and to defende the entrey, and paſſages into Italie. Now when Albinus haerde, that Seuerus made no delaye in the mater, but das enī at hād being before, as it were in a drearie, and paſſynghe the tyne in yds-

L.ii.      pleasures

pleasures, he was now ryken wþt h̄ a meruaprouse and sodeyne feare. Neuerthelesse he furthewith laſched out of Britaine unto the coſte of Fraunce, right ouer aneante it, where on the ſhoze he pytched hys campe, and ſente letters unto the Rulers of the nerte nations, deſyng them to ſende hym money, and viciualles, foꝝ the ayde, and ſuſtaunce of his armee. Thei that obyed his commaundemente, or requeſte, dyd moſte unhappely prouyde foꝝ them ſelues, brynging after the batayle put to deathe wþt dyuerſe terryble tormentes. And thone whiche ſet at noughe hys rule and power (although thei did the ſame moſe hap‐ pely, then prudently) yet escaped they without harme or damage, when as the chaunce and fortune of thyngeſ dyscerned hoſte theyz counſelles. When the Seuerian power was entered into Fraunce, the ſkypmþſes were lyght and bolant at the fyſte, butyll at length, the grete conſlict was geuen at Lions, a great and riche Cite. Foꝝ Albynus remayninge hym ſelue

The batayle be‐  
twene  
Seuerus  
& Albinus  
The En‐  
glishmen  
valiaute  
warriors  
within the Cite, ſente furthe his ſouldiours to the batayle. And when þ two armes ioyned hadde to hadde, the batayle endured a longe ſpace with equall strengthe, Seuerus on eyther syde, fo that the fortune of the victoꝝ de‐ pended doubtfull. Foꝝ the Britens were nothyng inferior to the Iリians, eyther in ſlowenes of ſto‐ make, or gredines of slaughter. Thus in the fyſte on‐ ſet, the frontes of two moſte valiantne armes, did to neyther syde enclyne, or ones recule. Pea (as manye Authours of the lame ſymie who wrote it nat for any perciallsauoure, but accordyng to the truthe haue leſte in memorie,) the whyngie of Albynus Armee was the better, and of more strengthe, againſte the bande that Seuerus ledde: fo that he fiedde, and fell from hys horſe, and throwenge awaie hys cote ar‐ mure, hydde hym ſelue. But whyle the Britens pur‐ ſued, reioyſyng even as perfecte Conquerours, ſodeynly, appeared Letus one of Seuerus Capitaines, wþt a freſhe Crewe of men: who was repro‐ ued and yll ſpoken of by the ſouldiours, as though he hadde of purpose houered, foꝝ to ſee the chaunce

Letus.

of the batayle, protracted the tyme, and detained them from leſtinge forewardes, that he myghte thereby haue caught the Romayne Empyre to hym ſelue. Foꝝ he moued not a ſaote towardes the feld, before he was certaynyed of Seuerus onerthowre. Whiche ſu‐ pcyon, the happe afterwardes ratyfied. Foꝝ after al thyngeſ were let in ordre, and Seuerus was at hea‐ tes eale, althoughe he benefycially rewarded all hys other Capitaines with great and riche giſtes, yet be‐ yng mynbeſſull of Letus ſeſſoaltie, and Trealon, he put hym (as was expeſſente) to deathe. But thei thyngeſ were done afterwardes. Then (as we before rehauſed) at Letus arpuall, the Seuerians recoſered perfyte hope, and Seuerus hym ſelue was put vpon hys horſe, and gyzte wþt a robe of purple. And ſeyng the Albynians (who thoughte them ſclues vcto‐ ryous banquifhers) leſtered abrode oute of ordre, ihys freſhe bande of men ſodenliſ ſet vpon them. And ſynally (after a lytle reſiſtance) compelled them to turne theyz backes and ſike away, whome beynge ouerthowen and dysperſed, the Seuerians pursued, and entred into the Cite. The number of them that were on eyther parte slayne, is dyuerſe leſte in me‐ morie, as it pleased the Myters of that age. Dute of hand than was the Cytte of Lyons ranſaked, burnit, and deſtroied, and the head of Albinus tryken of, and The deſth broughte to Seuerus. Thus were two notable victo‐ ries obtained, in þ East & North. So that there is no thynge, that a man may compare, vnto the contencions and factes of Seuerus: if he conſyder, eyther the multytude of men, the riþing vp of nacions, the nu‐ brie of batayles, or elles the lengthe, and ſpedy celeryte of tourneyes. In dede, the affayres of Cesar Pompeius, (eyther of them hauyng to his aliſſence Pompey the Romayne ſouldiours) were great, and merua‐ lious: fo were thoſe of Aꝝ. Iuſus agaynſte Anthony, Augustus, or Pompeius ſonnes. And ſo were the batayles Antonis, boþe Ciuite, and Foreſide, betwene Silla, and Ma‐ rius. But a man ſhall nearely fynde ſuſe an other Martius. as ihys: who diſpatched awaie three Emperours alredye,

## The thyrde booke.

the people riche giftes, in token of victory, rewardeþ  
souldours wþ great sumes of money, & gaue them many  
thinges they never received before. For firste he aug-  
mented the substance of their corne, & permitted them  
to weare ringes of golde, & every of them to kepe a wo-  
mā in his house. Al which being dysagreable to war-  
like discipline, scamed theretofore vnyprofitable to  
them which were ever prest & ready to the batayle. And  
he syfþ of all other altered the austernitie & hardnes of  
theyr liuing, the toleraunce of trauailes, and all their  
accustomed reverence towarde their Capitanies:  
having brought þ Souldiors acquainted wþ the greþy  
gaping for money, and the loue of þ Cittie comedines.  
When he had after this sort, set these affaires in good  
orde, as him selfe supposed, he came at length into the  
Senate house: And there sittynge in theperial Throne  
he began with a cruell oracion, to detecte the frendes  
of Albinus, shewing furth certaine of their priuy E-  
pistles which he had founþ with Albinus. He reproued  
some, for that they bestowed many boþiful giftes vpon him:  
And menaced al other, which eyther fauored  
thorientalles, or were of familiare acquaintance wþ  
Albinus. By these meanes, he dyd wythout respecte,  
put to deathe, euery notable and prudente Senatour,  
al other þ bare any rule in the prouynces, or excelled  
in byth, or ryches: auengyng hym selfe, (as he made  
semblaunte) vpon hys enemies, but in deate, cou-  
tousenesse was the onely cause, wherwþ he of al other  
Emperors was most intached. For as he gaue place  
to no man (were he euer so commendable) in pacience  
of mynde, perseuerance in laboures, and glorie of  
warfare, euен so, beyng aboue all measure addicted  
vnto auarice, he heaped treasure, thronghe vniuste  
murders, executed vpon euerye tryflying cause, & som-  
time without anye at all, enjoying thempyre, rather  
thronghe force, and feare, then anye benevolence, or  
good wyll of the people. Neuertheles, at the syfþ, he  
would seme familiare, & assable, in settynge out gorge-  
ous shewes, and pageauntes of al sortes, wþ the fleing  
of an. C. cruelle beaþes at a tyme, the whyche he had  
sent for, out of our swone, and Barbarous Regyons.

## The historie of Herodian

The noþ alreadye possessed of the domynyon, who crennem-  
ble actes fed with fraude and coulne the Cittie armye whiche  
of Seuerus garded Rome selfe, and the Senate house: who also  
procured one of the Princes to be murdered wythin  
thempervall Palayce, destroyed an other in the Oþ-  
erent, (whych obtained the chiese gouernement, & was  
erst by the Romaines taken as Emperour) & finally,  
broughte into his subiectyon the thyrde, whiche was  
endued with the name, honour, and authoritie of Ce-  
sar. This ende of life had Albinus, enjoying but a smal  
while his mortall and bloudye dignitie. After whose  
death Seuerus powred out al the Irouis cructie, and  
fverce wrath of his mynde, vpon the frendes & allies of  
Albinus. And syfþ haþinge sente hys heade vnto the  
Cittie, and commaunded that it shoulde be fastened o-  
penly vpon an highe gybbet, in the latter eande of an  
Epistle, (wherin he ceripfed the people of his victo-  
rye) he wrote thys also, that he sent Albinus head vnto  
Rome of purpose to be loked on, to therent, theysholda  
take example evident, what them selues shoulde lyke-  
wise suffer. Then after he had set in ordre thaffayres  
of Bryptayne, deuided into iiij. partes thadministracyon  
of thole Isle, and appeased all Fraunce, accordyng  
(as he thought) to hys owne mynde, and put to deathe  
all Albinus frendes, (whom eyther free wil, or nec-  
essite hadde ioyned vnto hym) he set forwardes im-  
mediately towardes Rome: leadyng thole army with  
hym, to therent he might seme þ more terrible. And  
haþing fynished his journey with swifte sped, as he  
accustomed, being enemys mortall vnto Albinus fren-  
des, he entered into the Cittie, wher al the people met  
& received him, wþ great recuerence, & joyfull shoutes.  
And thole Senate togithers welcomed hym. Netwith-  
standing, feare had greatly affonied some of them, for  
they were sure, þ he wolde not spare them, being of hys  
own nature ouer outragious, & the, haþing probable  
occasions of hatred against the. After he was entred  
into the Tempel of Jupiter, he there finisched þ accusto-  
med rites of sacrifice, & the retorneþ to thimperial pa-  
layce. Anone after he distributed liberallye amonges  
the

The historie of Herodian

He gaue besydes, ryche rewardes, and publyshed a sumptuous game, gettyng from all partes valyaunte Champonys, and cunnyngge wrestlers. We sawe also in the tyme of hys Kevgne, sundrye playes of all sortes, set furthe in all the Theatres, with suplycations, and watches, lyke the sacryfyses of Ceres. The same are called Seculer, celebratzed (as they reporte) at the ende onely of euery thyrde age. And the common Cryers went throughe al the Citye, and all Itaile, callynge all men to the Playes, whiche they never sawe before, nor therafter shoulde se: sygnysyng thereby, that the space of tyme betwene the celebration passed, i that was to come, exceded al thage of a man. Now Seuerus, after he had soiourneda while at Rome, and partycypated the regymente of empere wth hys ii. sonnes, percyuyng hym selfe to be famouse as yet, but by one Cyryle hystorye obtained agaynste the Romayne power, (for the whiche also he had refusid to Tryunphe) determinyd to become notable, wth the ouerthzowe, and standarde of the Barbarvens. Wherfore, vnder coloure of reuenging hym selfe vpon Barsemius kyng of the Atenyens, (who had assyld Syger) he led hys armye into thoyent. And there beyng at the verye poynte to invade Armenie Armenia, he was preuented by the kyng therof, whos sente vnto hym wyllynglye, bothe pledges and prestes, humblye deslyzyng, that he myghte entre into friendshyppe, and conclude a peace wth hym. After the whiche done, Seuerus, leyyng hys purpose in Armenia proceade as hym selfe wylshed, helde on hys journey towardes the Atenians. And Agbarus the kyng of the Osrohenians, came also and yelched him selfe vnto hym. And deslyzyng hys chyldzen as hostages, amplysyed the trusse of hys truthe, and loyaltie conceyued, by sendyng to the increase of hys armye, a greate power of Archers. From hence Seuerus passed ouer the Realme of Interamna, and the fyeldes of the Albenyans, and made a rode into Arabye the ferreyle, from whence come all the sweete & odiferous herbes, whiche we vse for pleasant vynys,

Ceres.  
Seculer  
playes.

Barse-  
mius.

Arcemie

Armenia

Agba-  
rus.

Osrohe-  
niens.

Interra-  
na.

Albeny-  
ans.

The thyrdeboke

Fo. xxxix.

poys, and perfumes. And having there destroyed many Cities, & villages, and wasted the hole countrey, he entred into Arenia. There he besyrged the Citye of Aras, beyng buylded upon an high Rocke, capased wth mightye and stronge walles, and fortifyed with a wonderfull puissaunt garrison of Archers.

Wherfore the Seuerian hoste, assaulted this Citye, with all the force thei had, and moned to the walles, towres, & engyns of all sortes, omittynge nothyng, that might availe to the assaulte, and batterye of the same. On the other syde, the Atenyans stowtely descended theyr Citie, shootinge, and throwing downe, arowes, dardes, and stones, wherewith thei gretely vexed the Seuerians. Thei threwe downe also, earthy vesseles fylled with certayne wynged, venemous lytle beastes: The whiche falling vpon the eyes, and faces of the Seuerians, or elles creapyng by lytle, and lytle, in at the open partes of their bodies, dyd ryghte harpely stynge, and wounde them. The Romayne Souldours besydes were fallen into diseases, beyng vnable to away with the seruenties of the ayre there because it was to extremelye hote, throughe the contynance of the Sonne: so that by thiese calualties, many more of them perished, then by the handes of their enemys. Wherfore Seuerus percyuinge them all soz wearied, and worne, the siege not prospering, and the hoste receyvinge more damage, and losse, the gayne, or profyt, determined, before they vitterlye periyshed, to lede them from thence: very elozowefull, that they departed, withoute attchiewing their entended enterprize. For beyng theretofore accustomed to wyne the victorie in all batayles, thei then accompted them selues overcomen, for that they had not vanquished. But fortune euer moze favorable vnto them, so prouided, that thei retourned not wout any things done: but with more fortunate successe, then thei looked for. For the hole armye, beyng shypped in sundrie vesseles arrived not (as thei syrste purposed) at the haue of Rome, but throughe the rage, and by violence of the waues, were driven to lande in the cosses of Par. Parthis

p. i.

## The thyrde boke

and shewes . And hauyng gauen amounges hem  
great giftes, hym selfe also solemnized sundrye play-  
es, for his victorye . After this he remained a longe  
tyme at Rome, late oftentymes in iudgemente, vpon  
the Cytye controversies, and gaue hys hole mynde to  
enstructe hys chyldren . But they, being yonge men,  
had corrupted their dispositions, wþth sensuall plea-  
sures of the Cytye, and ouermuche delite in riotting,  
and bawling . The Wzetherne also fell at harpaunce  
wythin them selues, thorȝ debate rysyng of chyldishe  
contencion, and boþshe braule, in settyng fourthe  
cockefightes, & quaylefyghtes, and the wrestlyng of  
lytle boves . For what souer thei had seene, or hearde  
in the Theatre, thei euer lyked it dixerly, the one not  
louynge, that the other did; but the thinge whiche was  
acceptable vnto thone, incōtinently became odious to two Son  
the other, they þ Parasites, and seruautes, egging the nes.  
The de-  
bate of  
Seuerus<sup>2</sup>  
two Son  
to discencion, & flatering them, to thenter, thei mighte  
allure they þ matthers to they þ owne nouȝtþ wyll, &  
appetites . Wherqf when Seuerus hearde, he ende-  
noured to reconcyle them, & to correcce their corrup-  
ted maners . And then vnto Bassianus (who at that Bassian<sup>2</sup>  
tyme enjoyed thimperiall dignities & honours, had  
receyued the surname of Marcus, beynge called Se-  
uerus Antoninus, & was his eldest Sonne) he gaue  
to wyse the daughter of Plautianus, the Lord great  
dayster of his householde . This Plautianus, being  
(as it is reported) by byrþe of base estate, was detec-  
ted, and founde gylyte of sedicion, and other notari-  
ous crimes, & therfore punished wþ banþhemet . But  
Plautia-  
nus.  
he wag Seuerus countrey man, borne in Aphrique,  
and as soþe conjecture, nyghe of kyndred vnto hym,  
but as other surmyse, rather gratefull vnto hym in  
þyvous lyuynge, through the flawre, and bewyre of  
his youth . Hym did Seuerus enhauise frþ simple and  
low degre, vnto wþderful abundance of treasure.  
And giving vnto hym the goddes of many that were  
condeyned, enriched him aboue all other: restraining Thinsolé  
only, from the admynistring him into the gouernance eyre of  
of the empyre . The whyche rychedesse, and liberte, Plauti-  
he abusynge, omittid no kynde of cruelty, in doing. his .

## Thistorie of Herodian

Ctesiphō thian, nat farre from the Ctie of Ctesiphon, wherelin  
standeth the Palaye royal of the Parthenyā Kinge.  
Wher he then liuing in resse, and reckening the warres,  
which Seuerus had with the Aremās, nothing per-  
tinent to his charge, did not in that his yole tranquill-  
tie, suspecte, or thinkē upon any peril, or myshappe,  
wardes hym selfe entended . When the Seueria ar-  
mye was, (as I sayd) by behemencie of weþter, dri-  
uen on lande, at the bankes of this Rovaulme, thei be-  
gan oute of hāde, to spoyle and ryele all the Cuntry,  
drīning before them all the heardes of Catel, and floc-  
kes of sheepe, thei founde . And burning many villa-  
ges in their waye, thei marched by small toreyes, to  
the Ctie selfe of Ctesiphō, in the which the great Ar-  
tabanus then laye . And there syndenge the Barba-  
rouse people vnpurueyed of defens, thei slew all that  
resisted, lacked the Ctie, and carryed away as Capti-  
ues, boþe women, and children . The king hym selfe,  
with a fewe horsemen, only escaped . His treasure, or-  
namentes, and householde stufse, the Seuerians, as  
conquerours, sealed vpon, and then retourned . Thus  
Seuerus, more thrughe fauorable fortune, then pru-  
dent policye, obtayned the Parthian Conquest . Af-  
ter the prosperous atchieuinge wherof, he lente vnto  
the Senate, and people of Rome, gloriouse Letters,  
full of ostentacio: & Tables, wherin were gorgeouſlie  
paynted, and at length sette out, his myghty batailes,  
and valiaunt victories . For the which the Senate de-  
creed many honours vnto him, and gaue him the sur-  
names of the naciona by hym, before Conquered . In  
the meane whyle, after this happe in the orientall af-  
faires, he retourned towardes Rome: hauiȝ his two  
Sonnes, (who were then of ripe age) in hys Compa-  
nie . And after he had finished his torey, committed the  
rule of þ prouinces, vnto those whiche lyked hym best,  
and misstered the Visians, & Pannonyens, he finally  
entered into the Ctie with Triumphe . The people re-  
ceyued hym wþ ioyfull shoutes, and all other Ceremo-  
nies to the same appertaining, vnto whome he grau-  
ted certayne extra dynary holye dayes, sacryfices,

Artaba-  
nus:

Visians

Pannoni-  
ans .

and

what pleased hym: and became more outragouse, then anye Prynce ther to so raygryng. His daughter (as is sayde) dyd Seuerus gyue for wife vnto his Sonne. But Antonyne hym selfe was nothynge ioyful of the same, enforcethereunto, rather by necessite, then good wyll. For to the btemoore he detested the mayden, and her father: so that he vsed neyther one bed, nor one house wytch her, in suche wylle abhor-  
ynge her, that he darly menaced, to put her father & her vnto deathe, assoone as by hym selfe he shold pos-  
sess chempyre. The whiche when she had estones re-  
pozeth vnto her father, and opened howe greatly she  
was of her husbande disdaigned, she kyndeled the ma-  
ruiaylouslye vnto wrathe. So that Plautianus  
(perceyning on the one syde Seuerus to be decrepitate  
and aged, and many tymes vexed wytch dysleakes, espe-  
ciallye the gowte, and on the other syde Antonius to  
be a fyerse, stoute, and cruell yonge man, became bea-  
ry fearefull of hys theateyninges, and determinyd to  
commyn some notable myschyf, before hym selfe per-  
ryshed. There were manye thynges, whiche enflam-  
med hym wytch ardente ambycyon of chempyre.  
That is to weete, hys aboundinge of rychesse (the  
lyke whereof, no pryuate person at any time thereto-  
fore possessed) the obeydence of the Souldoure, the  
great honoure he enioyed amonges al the Romaines,  
and the ornamente of apparylle, wherein he wente  
abrode. For he ware a garmente called Latus Cla-  
nius, and hadde bene twylle Consult. He ware also  
a sworde, and all other tokens of promocyon, and  
dygnitie: beyng wheresoeuer he went so terrible, that  
he was not onely vnapproched vnto of any man, but  
also, ys anye by todayne chancie happened to mee-  
te him, they woulde turne theyz faces from hym. And  
what way so euer he made hys Journeye, he had cer-  
tayne Uslers going before him, whiche comaunded  
euerye man to auopde the Stretes, and no man to be so  
hardye, as to beholde hym, but to turne awape theyz  
eyes, and loke upon the earthe. The whiche when Se-  
uerus knew, hym selfe tolde it not paciently; but grude-

ged

ged greatlye thereat, so that he diminished muche of  
Plautianus auctoritie, and endeuored to perswade  
hym, to abate somewhat, at the least wise, of his so in-  
solent arrogancy. But Plautian being therof impa-  
cient, doubted not to compasse by conspiracy, & Tre-  
asore, chempyre selfe: and therfore ymaged thys dryft.  
There was a certayne Tribune named Saturnin, Satur-  
whiche chiesly reuerenced Plautianus, and albeit all min-  
ster did so likewise, yet dyd he more and more crepe  
into his fauoure, by a greater token and apparaunce  
of honouryng hym. Thys man Plautianus reckened  
to be hys most trusy and faythfull frende, and suche,  
as onely woulde kepe secrete, and close, hys counsell,  
and erecture, what so euer he shold commaunde him.  
And therfore sent for him in the eueninge, and having  
remoued al other aparte, sayd these wordes vnto him.  
**C**howe is (þe) the time come, wherein thou muste  
make perfect, thy loue, & obaysance towardes me (of son of  
the whiche thou haste hytherunto shewed evidentes Plautia-  
nus) and wherin I may suffycyently recōpence thy nus.  
The choyle is gyuen vnto the, whÿther thou  
wylt eschew my daunger, whom thou now seest, and  
become bassallie vnto my power, or ellis oute of hande  
perish, wþ the worthy punishment of a stubburne stro-  
make. Feare thou not the greatness of the enterpryse,  
neither dismay thy selfe wþ the names of the perors.  
It is lawful for the, to go alone into the Chaumbers,  
where they slepe, & as if þe diddest returne to the night  
watche, thou maiest easly without any interruptiō  
atchein what thou desyreste. There is nothinge elles  
wherin thou shouldest longer awayt for my comau-  
ndement. Go thy way now into the courte as thouȝe  
thou haddeſt ſome priyue & weighty message of mine  
to do, and there, as becommeth a valiant man, mur-  
dere that olde manne and boy, wþin eyther of theyz  
Chaumbers. And as thou arte partaker of the daun-  
ger, euē so, after it is eanded, thou shalt enjoy parte  
of the greatest honoures. These woordes albeit they  
somewhat afondyed the Trybunes mynde, yet dyd  
they not biterlye conſonne and expell hys counsell.

## The Historie of Herodian,

But as a man of a prompte and readye wytte (for he was a Syrian borne, and for the most part, thenha-bytauntes of the Dryent are of exace and sharpe indgements) perceyuyng the frantike folye, and mere madnes, of Plautianus, and knowynge also what he was able to do, durst not reprehende any thynge that was spoken, leasse hym selfe shoulde furthewryt be slayne. But saynyng that all he hadde hearde, was acceptable unto hym, syrle he saluted Plautianus as Emperoure, and then requyred a lybell of hys hande concerningye the commaundemente of the sayd murdre. For it was the usage of Tyrtauntes, when they hadde wþchoute lawfull iudgement, commaunded anye manne to be put vnto deathe, to gyue the charge therof, wþeten in some lytell boke, leaste thers shoulde no argumente, or proofof, remayne of the same appoyntmente. Wþt that Plautianus, blynded wþt ouer muche couetyse, deluyered vnto the Trybune a boke, and sente hym towardes the murdre, wþllyng hym that assoone as he had slayne boþe the Princes, before the facie were publyshed, he shoulde sende for hym, to the entents he myghte be sene wþthin themperval Palayce, before any man hearde of hys possessyon of thempyre. Upon thys conuante the Trybune departed from Plautianus, and as he was wonte, passed seelwe throughs all the Courte: where, ponderynge wþt hym selfe and perceyuyng howe knelye it were for one manne to murdre the twos Princes, lyinge in sundry Chambers, he syrle wente to Seuerus lodgyng, and there wylled certayne of hys prouye Chaumber, to helpe hym to the speache of the Emperoure, sayinge that he broughte newes, whiche appertayned to the Emperours sauergarde. They made spadye relacyon thereof vnto Seuerus, who furthwryt commaunded the Trybune to be let in. And he beyng entered

The before the Emperoure sayde these wordes. I am Treason come hyther (to Emperoure, q̄ he) as he that sente disclosed, me syrmelye supposeth to murdre youre persone,

But

## The thirde boke.

But as I my selfe boþe, wþsþe, and wþll, to be the aucthoure of a greate benefyte and the preseruacþon of youre healthe. Plautianus lyng in awaþe wþt Treason for thempyre, hath appoynted me to murdre boþe you, and youre Sonne. And that not onelye in wordes, but in wþptyng also, the Testimonye whereof is thys boke. And in dede, I promiséd hym to accomplayſþe that he commaundeb, leasþ. I reected it, an other woulde haue taken it in hande. But nowe I am here presente, to bewraye the matter vnto you, leasse hys presumptuouse Trecherye, shoulde oppresse you onwares.

Notwþtandynge, that the Trybune spake these wordes wþt aboundinge of teares, yet dyd not Seuerus at the syrle credyte it, so muche was the memorye of Plautianus loue towardes hym, syred, as yet in hys breste; þea, he suspected all the matter too be contrayued of a purpose, thynkyng that hys Sonne, who abhorred Plautianus, and detested hys daughter, had Imagyned thys craftye Couyne, and mortall slander agaynst hym. Wheresoþe, hauynge called hys Sonne vnto hym, he beganne to rebuke hym, for that he hadde deuyled suche myschyfes agaynſt hys frenðe, and well wylle. But Antonyne at the syrle, sware, and protestyd, that he was ygnoraunte of all thys busynesse, and afterwardes encouraged the Trybune (whoo persyssyd in hys tale, and shewyd furthe the booke), to declare the hole Treason. Than the Trybune (perceyuyng into þowre greate daungere he was entered, not ygnoraunte þowre nuche in fauour Plautianis was wþt Seuerus, and knwynge precyfelye, that yf the Treason laye hidden, and the matter not thoroughlye proued, him selfeshould receyue certame and cruell deathe,) spake thus vnto them. My Soueraigne Lordes (þ he) what more ample argumente or perfecte proofof do you seke hereof? permitt me that I maye go furthe of the Courte, and

¶.iii.

### The Historie of Herodian.

and by some secrete and trusty person certisye Plautianus, that all his commaundement is fulfilled. He beseuyng it, wilbe here out of hande, to occupie the Palacie as boide. Then shal it be your parces, to examine, and trye oute the truthe. And after he had thus muche spoken, he chose a saychfull, and trusty persone vnto hym, whiche shoulde in his name exhorte Plautianus, to make haste and come furthwith to the Coorte, seynge bothe the Princes were slayne: for it behoued hym, before the deade were pablyshed amonges the people, to be within the Palacie; that therby, occupyeng the Principall Tower, and establyshenge themyselue vnto hym selfe, all men shoulde mangre their hatres obey hym as one not entringe into thempyre, but as already possessed therof. Plautianus crediting this matter, was puffed with a meruailouse presumption and hope. Ans putting on hym a shyzte of mayle for the sure defensice of hys bodye, aboute the eueninge of the same daye ascended into hys Chariotte, and made haste towardes the Coorte with a fewe whyche were present attending vpon hym, who thoughte he hadde bene sente for by the Emperours, about some earnest and weighty busynesse. And when he was wþhoutte let of any manne, entered into the Palayce, the porters beyng ignoraunte, what the matter mente) the Tribune mette hym, saluted hym as Emperoure by collusyon of purposse imagined, toke hym by the hād, and ledde hym into the Chamber, where he seynged that bothe the dead Emperours Corples laye. Nowe hadde Seuerus appoynted certayne of hys Garde to laye handes vpon hym, as soone as he were commen in. But when Plautianus, hauinge at that instantane other falsyes in his heade, was entred into the Chamber, sawe the two Emperours there standyng, and perceyued hym selfe apprehended, beyng wþt that so greate a matter, very sore agast, he began humbly to entreate, and desyre pardon, affyrminge that all thys dryste was forged vniuerselly, of malice against him. The Seuerus reproched hym, reberysinge the manys folde benefites, and honours, he had bestowed on hym.

And

### The thyrde booke.

Fol. xlviij.

And Plautianus replyed agayne, repetynge the tessimonies of hys accustomed truthe, and good wyll towardes thempersour: wherwith Seuerus began somwhat relente, and credite the wordes of Plautianus: vntyll that the shyzte of mayle appeared throughe a slyt of his vpper garment. Whiche Anthonyne perceiving being a ferne, and fierfe yonge man, and therfore detesting Plautianus, saied. I wold gladli wete (þ) he) what answere thou wylte make vnto these two pointes. Why camest thou in the euening, vnto them perours vnsent for? And what meaneth this sherte of mayle thou wearest: for who comayeth in armure to a supper or banquette? And hauinge so sayde, he comaundered the Tribune, and those that were present to stabbe hym in with their swordes, and daggers, as a nyhemet manyfested Traitors, and open enemys. And ther ma- kinge no delaye in the mater, executed Theperours of Plautianus. The pu- man of insatiable auarice. After this done, Seuerus constituted two Capitaynes ouer the men of armes, and hym selfe moste commenly soioured in the Suburbes, þz elles nyghe the Sea costes of Camparia, sitting in iudgement, vpon maters of controuersy in the lawe. And beyng very diligent in Ciuite affayres, chiefly coueyted to haue his childerne traded at Rome with decente, & honest maners. For he perceived that theyr myndes were bente vnto playes, and shewes, moze vehemently, then became thestate of Princes. Wherby it wold come to passe, that the yōge mynes studiis, & cotencions, tending to diuerse purposes, their wills also, and appetites woulde become dysagreable, whē (as it were) certaine frondes of debate, wold be kindled betwene them. But especially Anthonyne, after the death of Plautianus, wered terrible vnto al men. Besides that, he compassted wþt all the crasce, & ymaginacions, he could devise, how he might destroy the daughter of Plautianus, hys owne wōfe. But Seuerus sent her wþt her lytle Sonne, whiche he had

P. i.

## The Historie of Herodian

had by Antonine, into Sicilia, with as much richeesse, as abundantly suffyced, for her meate, and drincke, & other necessaries: Ensuyng in that point, Augustus, who entreated after the same sort, the Sonnes of Antonius, after he was adiudged a Traitor. Seuerus endeououred in all that he coulde, to reduce hys Sonnes to loue, and concorde, and to reconcyle eyther to other, admonyshing them, wch auncient Hisories, and examples, wherin many calamites, rise thughe discorde of Bretherne, wer reherled. He added therun to the Treasure him selfe hadde gathered togither, all the Temples filled with money, and the richeesse, whiche increased daylye of sovereyne Tributes, howe the Souldours, might through that abundance, be retayned with ample, and riche gystes, and how the mē of armes in the Cittie, were augmented fourre times, more the theſt were before, and so greate an armee, ſouyned nyghe the Cittie, that no ſoveryn power (þf a man conſidered the ſelue multitude, or the greatenes of their bodies, or elles the abundance of money) could be founde comparable unto them. But all thiſe thinges, he ſayed, wolde be of none effecte, whiles the two brethren dysagreed & kepte ciuell warre within them ſelues. With rehersall hereof, and entermedlyng corrrections with praier, he laboured, to reprefle their iſolent courages, and to bringe them to an atonement, and concorde. But all was in vaine, for theſt had thowen the brydclies out of theyr mouthes, beynge continually encyned to the worse. And although the yong men, throughe the feruencie of their youth, and immo derate lycence, were ſtirred too much alreadye, unto delytes of sundrye voluptuous luſtes, yet were theſt euer redi at their elbowes, flockes of parasites, which allured them vnto diuerſe, & contrary dispoſitions: not only extolling their diſſolute vices, but also inuicting newe pleasures, wherwith the one myght be pleased, and the other offend. Of the which parasites, Seuerus hym ſelue, apprehended many, in the verye mynery of theyr flatterye, and therefore dyd put them to death. As the olde man was thus in mynde moleſted, wþch

## The thyrd booke.

wþch the ſenſuall, and vnhoneste lyfe, and delytes of hys Sonnes, he receyued letters from hys lyueternaunte of Englande, wherby he was enformed, how the barbaroule people rebelled, and wasted thole Region with invasions, and Commocions. Wherefore, he neaded a greater puylauice of men, to reſiſt, and Commoſſuppreſſe them: there wanted the Emperours preſeſt cion and alſo. Glad was Seuerus hereof: for beynge a man of mutinein his owne nature, greadie of renoune, after his vptorienies, in thoxiente, and Septentrion, and his ſurnames by þame obtained, he coueyted to make ſome Conqueſt, ouer the Englyſhemen. And to lede hys Sonnes, fourthe of the Cittie, that being farre from the pleauures therof, theſt might accuſtome them ſelues, to warlike, and ſober dyet. Wherefore, he proclaimed his expediſion into Britayne, beynge very olde, and ſore troubled with the goute, but yet of ſo valiaunte a ſtempe, as never was any yonge man. In hys iorney, he roade moſt communely in a horſe litter, never reſting longe in any place. When he had ended his voyage, and paſſed the Ocean Sea, with as muſche celerite as can be thought, he entred into Britayne, muſſered his Souldours, hauing gathered a woderfull power togithers, and prepares hym ſelue to batayle. The Britons, beynge aſtonied, and agaſte wþch they ſo ſodeine arriuall, of thempereur, And hearinge that ſo huge, an holt was assembled againſt them, let Ambassadores unto him, to purge their miſdemeanours, & entreat for peace. But Seuerus, makinge delates of purpose, leſt he ſhuld retoerne to Rome, wout ani thiſ done, & being very desyrous of þ Coquell, & ſurname of Britaine, diſmiffed the Ambassadores home againe, wout any reſolute anſweſe, geue to their ſuite. Hym ſelue, with circumſpecte industrie prepared all thiſes expediente unto the warre. And his chieſt care, was to buylde bridges ouer, and in the marshes, to thentente hys Souldours myghte ſtande and fyghte England in safetyp. For manye places in Britaine, are full of full of watery marshes, throughe the often flowinge oꝝ marshes ouer, of the Ocean Sea. By thole marshes dyd þe Thoceaꝝ,

## The thyrde booke.

age, so that he was constrained to kepe his Chambre, and sende Antonine vnto the warres, there to execute chempourours offyce. But Antonine, not regardyng any busynesse of the Brytons, endeououred by all the meanes he could, to winne, and confyzme the heartes of the Souldours vnto hym, deprauyng often tymes his brother, to thentente they shold onely obey, and ayde hym, to the attaynyng of the Soueraigntye. The longe maladye of hys father, and the slowe procrassynacyon of hys death, caused the yonge man to be verye pensyfe, and doubtfull, so that he laboured to perswade hys fathars Phisicions, and mynysters to rydde in anye case, wþt all celerytye possyble, the of Seuerolde man oute of the world: vntyll that Seuerus, being rather throughe thoughte, then syckenies, consumed, eanded hys lyfe: who was the moste famouse of all Emperours in warlyke assayres. For none other had obtayned so manye vctoryes, and Conqueress, as hys vctories, agaynst hys aduersaries, or forreyne assyres. Thus deceased he, after he had gouerned thempyre the space of. xvii. ye. res, leauyng hys Sonnes for hys successours in the same: vnto whom he leste also so greate aboundinge of riches, as none of his predecessours had before him done, and a greater army, then anye forreyne power was able to relyste. When Anthonyne had ones gotten the Supreame auctorite, he began to destroye eltye of every man from the verie bedde syde, as the prouerbe Antosayth. For he put to deth the Phisicians, because they obeyed not hys commaundemente, in hastynge hys fathers deathe. And slewe all hys owne, and broders bouriyses and enstructers, for that they wente about to reconcyle theym, leauyng throughe hys crneltye, none a lyue, that was eyther in dynasty, or had reuerenced hys father. The Chyuetapnes of charmye, he entyced, to perswade the Souldours, to proclaim hym onely Emperoure: ymagynyng daylye many folde myschyes agaynst hys brother. But he could not wyn the Souldours good wylles, or assent therunto. For they remembred that Seuerus brought eyther

P. iii. ther

## The Historie of Herodian

The as: Brytons swymme and skyrmyshe therin wþt theyz eyente & enemyes, beyng couered wþt water vnto the na-  
olde ma- uell, and not muche caring, that men se the pþtþ par-  
ners of tes of theyz naked bodyes. Neþher dyd they knowe  
Englysh the vse of apparaile, but accustomed to compasse their  
men, belyes and neckes onely wþt Iron, whych they este-  
med an ornament, and token of richesse, as other bar-  
barous people supposed golde. They paynte theyz bo-  
dies, wþt dyuerse pycutures, and fourmes of beastes,  
and therefore weare no garmente, least the paynting  
shoulde be hydden, beyng a nacion verye valiaunte,  
and warlyke, gredys of slaughter, and contente onely  
wþt a small target, a speare, and a skeyne hangynge  
by theyz naked sydes, ignoraunte vterlye of thuse of  
shytes of mayle, and helmettesfor: they reckened the  
same cumbersome vnto them, whē they shold swim o-  
uer the lakes, throughe whose vapours and heate, the  
ayre is there always myste and darke. Seuerus o-  
mytted nothyng vndone, that myghte awytle the Ro-  
maine Souldours, and endomage the Brytons. And  
when all thynges were prepared, as hym selfe wþl-  
shed, he leste hys yonger Sonne named Geta, in a  
parte of the Isle, whiche was subiecte vnto the Ro-  
maines, to se to the iudgements of matters in law, &  
thad mystracyon of Cyuile assayres: vnto whom he  
appoynted as Counsellours, certaine of hys frendes,  
beyng graue Personages. And hym selfe toke An-  
tonyne in hys companye agaynst the Brytons. Af-  
ter the Romayne armye was passed the Riuers, and  
Wulwarke (whiche beyng buylded ouer aneant the  
Brytons, at that tyme eanded the boundes of the Ro-  
mayne Empyre) there were foughten manye lyghte  
skyrmishes, wheroft al tyme the Romaines were  
victours. But the flyghte from them was easye vnto  
the Barbarous: for they hidd them selues in woodes,  
lakes, and other secreete corners, wherwith they were  
thoroughlye acquaynted. All the whiche beyng  
contraryous vnto the Romaynes, caused muche de-  
lay in the warre. In the meane season, a greuouse di-  
sease came vpon Seuerus, beyngesoze appaled wþt  
age,

Geta.

The sick  
nesse of

Seuerus.

### The historie of Herodian

ther of them vp from theyz insancie, wþtþ equall dilig  
gence, & them selues had euer shewed lyke honoure &  
obedyence to them both. Wherfore Antonine, percei  
uyng that he coulde not speade of hys purpose wþtþ  
charmye, hauyng taken truce wþtþ the Brytons,  
graunted them peace, and received theyz hostages, he  
remoued wþtþ great spedē towardes hys Woother &  
Brother. Wher the two Brethren met togither, theyz  
Woother laboured to bryng them to agrement, wher  
in also, many of the moste prudente, and sage of Se  
uerus frendes, and Counsailors, earnestly traualled.  
Antonyne thereby (seyng all men repyned hys sensu  
alytie) was enduced, rather of force, then good wyll,  
to counterfaite loue. After whych done, the two Bre  
thren, gouernyng thempyre wþtþ equall honoure,  
and Soueraignyce, launched oute of Brytayne, and  
sayled wþtþ the Kelyques of theyz father, towardes  
Rome. For when they had burned the bodye, they ca  
ried the ashes, intermedled wþtþ certayne pleasant  
odours, in a bore of Alabastre to Rome, that it might  
be there enteared, & enclosed amonges the sacred mo  
numentes of other Princes. Them selues ledde

thus theyz armie, as Conqueroures of  
Brytayne, and passed ouer Thocean,  
vnto the next coaste of Fraunce.

After what sorte therefore,

Seuerus deceased, and  
howe hys Sonnes  
ooke vppon

thempyre, it is in thy  
presente booke at  
lengthe de  
clared.

(s)

**C** The ende of the  
thyrd booke  
of Hero  
dyan.

**C** The

**C The Argumente of the  
fourthe Fooke of Ye  
rodian.**

De fourthe Booke, speakeþ of  
the pompe, that was at the Co-  
nonizacion of Seuerus. The  
discorde, and debate, of the two  
two Bretherne, and the deathes  
of Geta slaine by his own Brø-  
ther Anthouyne, who remay-  
ned after sole Emperour, and  
was very cruel and vncōstaunt.  
After that, of the Treasō, done  
by hym to the Alerandriens, and the caule therof. Di-  
an other Treason done vnto Artabanus the King  
of Parthia. And howe Anthouyne hym selfe  
was slayne by Martialis one of hys Garde,  
and howe Macrinus was made Em-  
perour, who sustayned, and helde  
on the warre with Artabanus,  
and synallye made peace  
and concorde with  
hym.



(:) (:) (:)  
(:) ) ( (:)  
(:) , (:) , (:

**C** The fourthe book of  
Chaucer of Berce  
dian.

Preston

The Actes of Decius by 3 spaciof. 1511. yere gave in the former booke sufficiently shewed. After whose death, the young Emperours his sonnes, to their mother, returned hastily towardes Rome: blyng in their joynew continual rauers and debate. For they never lodged in one place, bled one table: suspecting dailie, all they mete, and brynde, leste ryther of them preventing other, shoulde soueraynly in their seruices, worke hys feare wþh popson. And for that cause, they made the spreadier remouinges: thinking to liue more safelie within the Cittie, where they purposed, to deuyde the imperial palacie betwene them, or elles (as they bothe chiesly wylched) to lyve a sunder, in other the largest, & beautifull houses of the Cittie. When they were entered into Rome, all the people crowned wþh Lawzell, receyued, and the Senate welcommmed them. Formoste rode thenselues themselves, clothed in Imperiall purple. And aertre them followed the Consulles, bearing the vessell wþh Seuerus reliques. Which vessell, the people, after they hadde saluted the newe Emperours, dyd reverentlye worshyp. The Emperours & Consulles bevyng thus accopanied wþh princely pompe, carayed the same into the Temple, where the stupre monumetes, of Marcus, and other Emperours, are seen. After they had synched the solempne sacrifice, and according to the aunciente usage, celebratzed the funerall Ceremonyes, bothe the Bretherne departed into thiperfall palacie: which they devised betwene them, closed by all backe doores, and princiay posternes, and mette togither onely at the bicer gates. They chose besydys, eyther unto hym selfe a sandrye Garde, and neuer came togithers, unles it were some tyme for a lytle whyle to be seen of the people. Neuerthelesse, first

20.1.13 98

## **The History of Herodians**

of all, thei accōplished the due funerallies, of their Father. For the Romaines accusstome, to cōsecrate with Immortallithee, suchē Emperours, as at their deare, leue eyther Childe, or Successour; in their syre bēnde them. And those whiche are endowēd with that honour, thei Canonize amonsthe Goddes. There is throughout the Cite, a certayne dolefull lamentation, mured with feastfull ioye. And thei use to enterre the dead Corpse, very sumptuously, after the comon sorte of men. But then, thei haue an Image, made as lyke the deade Emperour, as may be. The same, within the porche, of the Imperiall palacie, thei laye in a great, & highe bedde of Iuozie, covered ouer with cloth of golde. And truly, the same Image, looketh verypale, lyke unto a diseased pacient. About the bedde on eyther syde, a great parte of thys daye, do certayne persons lye. That is to weete, on the lefft syde, the Senate, clothed in blacke garmentes: And on the ryghtsyde, many Matrones, whome either their husbades, or parentes dignitēes, do bewepe. None of thysle, are seene to lye any owches, or chapayes of golde. But beyng cladde, wth thinne white vesture, thei shewe the countenaunce of mourners. And thus doo thei contynewe the space of viii. dayes: dureng the which, every daye, themperours Phisicians, doo repaire unto the Bedde. And, as though thei hadde felte the pacientes pulces, declare that he wareth more sickē then before. Finally, when it semeth that he is deceasst, Certayne of the mosse noble, and worthy yonge men, of thordres of knyghtes, & Senatours, doo take vp the bedde, on their shoulders, and carry it throughe the Strete called Sacra via, onto tholde market place, where the Roymaine magistrates, are accusstomed to reder by their offices. Ther, on both sides, are certayne stages made wth steppes, vpō the which, on thone side, is a quere of boyes, beyng noble mens Sonnes, and on thother syde, are many bewyfull women, singing Hymnes, and balades, in prayse of the dead Emperour, meawred wth diuerses lamentable verses. When those are synysched, the yonge men do take vp the bedde againe, and bere it out of the citie, into the feldē called Cam-

## The fourthe book

pus Martius. In the broadest parte whereof there is  
erected a towre four square, w<sup>t</sup> sides of equal heighe,  
buylde of great timber, lyke unto a Tabernacle. The  
same within furth, is filled with dyre chappels, & Ro-  
des: And on the outer syde, haged with arras clothes  
of golde, and decked with images of Iustice, and san-  
cte painted pictures. Within it also, is an other leste  
Towre, but lyke in forme, with doores and portalles  
opened. And ouer y<sup>t</sup> the iii. & fourthe, w<sup>t</sup> manye other  
roumes, ascending continually, until they reache up  
to the highest, which is leste then all the other. A man  
may copare this building, vnto 2 towres, whiche are  
set in banes, w<sup>t</sup> fyre on the Toppes, to direete shipp-  
pes, which sayle by nyght on the seas, into their per-  
fecte portes, and sure stacions. The same are common-  
ly called Phari. Now wh<sup>t</sup> thei haue put the bedde in y<sup>t</sup> phari,  
the Seconde Tabernacle, they garther togidhers all  
kyndes of spicerie, and perfumes, w<sup>t</sup> divers odorisifer-  
ous frumentes, herbes, & myces, the whiche they thrōwe  
on heapes, in the Tabernacle. Neither is ther, any na-  
cion, Cittie, or person, whiche ettelletch in honours or  
dignitie, but at y<sup>t</sup> time, wil to the hlest most of hy<sup>t</sup>s pa-  
were, honorably celebrazate, the laste funeralles, of the  
persone. When thei haue couched a great heape of spi-  
ces togidhers, & stufed y<sup>t</sup> building therewith, all the  
Romaine knyghtes, do ride about y<sup>t</sup> Towre, w<sup>t</sup> a tuffe  
course, to order to a fro, called of the Dicribichus. Cha Pirrh-  
ciottes are also drawē about, wherin many do sit, etc. chius.  
thered in purple, representyn g perlos, or all noble me, be-  
ing Hagilrates, & Capitaines, of Rome. The Cerem-  
onies being throughtly ended, the Succellos, in them-  
selves, taketh a brāde of fire in his hande, & streth theris  
the Tabernacle. After wh<sup>t</sup>, all other y<sup>t</sup> are preset, doo-  
thrōwe fire likewise, into the same, and immediatly  
al y<sup>t</sup> buildig, being filled w<sup>t</sup> thole dry stokes, & spices,  
begineth to burne behemeth. Then out of y<sup>t</sup> highest, &  
lest Towre, as out of a hyghe temple, is let founthe an  
Egle, the whyche they beleue, dothe beare & hempe-  
rours soule, into heauen. And from thence founthe is  
that Emperour worshyped as the other Goddes.

四

卷之三

## Thistorie of Herodian

The dys. When these twoo yonge menne, had after thys sorte  
esode of y consecrated theyr parent, they returned home: in her  
two b̄z: they dayly exercysed priuye grudges, lyng in awynt  
theren.

one so; an other, and vmagynnyng al y meanes, wher-  
by they myght entrappē eyther other. I fhalys, they  
ompted nothyng, wher ewch eyther of them myght  
destroy, and defeate other, and aspire to thole Monar-  
chy by hym selfe. Welydēs that, the myndes of all the  
noble men, and Cyteyzns, whych had anye honoura-  
ble offyce, or dygnytē, were seuered into dyuerse fac-  
crys(either of the brethre), sending theyr secrete let-  
ters, to allure wþch landz y mōyles, manye unto  
theyr pruyuate appetyces. The greates parte leaned  
vnto Geta, because he shewed a greate token of good-  
nes, behaued hym selfe modestly in theyr companyes,  
and vþd honest studys. For he retayned commonlye  
aboute hym, manye that were well learned, and exer-  
cysed hym selfe, in wasselyng, and other lyke cāmen-  
dable recreacyons. And wþch hys gentle hanoures to-  
wardes all men, he wanne very manie unto hys fren-  
deshyp, and loue, through a certaine pryncipal glory.

**Anto-** But Antoxyne in contrary wyls, behaued hym selfe  
nine  
outrage- in all thynges moxe cruallye. For being alienat from  
the maners I before rehearsed, he affected, to semē an  
onse and embracer of warlike lyfe, and company. And through  
cruell. oderyng all matters irefully, he purchased vnto him  
selfe frendshyp, rather through menacyng, and feare,  
then gentle persuasions, or good wyl. Now after their

Mother had a long time in batyn, endeouored to reduce  
The par the into brotherly concord, and vnitie, it semed best, to  
lynge of deuide theyrre betwene the. Wherfore, having called  
thempire togidher theyr fathers frendes, they agreed of y same  
betwene dyvision. So that all Europe fel vnto Antonines lot,  
the twoo & the lande ouer aneansse it, called Asia, was appoin-  
brethren ted vnto Geta. Therbi, either of the, as it wer, throug  
propon: a certayne dyvine prouidence, shold be seperated in the  
tis. Sea of Propontis. And it was concluded, y Antoni-  
Wzāciū nes army shold remaine in Wzāciū, and Getas, in  
Chalcedon a Cittie of Wzithinia. The which Citties, bo-  
don. ing situate one against y other, shold defend eyther of  
theys

## The fourthe boke.

Fo. xlviij.

theyr limittes, & prohibyte the bothe, from invasions:  
As many Senators as were of Europe, shold remain  
in Rome, & al the rest attend upon Geta: who appoin-  
ted for the Deates royall of his dominion, Antioch, & Antioch  
Alexandrie, bothe Cities of greatnes, not muche infē: Alexan-  
droz to Rome. Then of the inhabitautes of y South, dñe.  
leuing the Mauritanians, & Pumidians, vnto Anto: Maurita-  
nine, him selfe toke al y residue, euen vnto the Orien-  
tal costes. Whiles thei debated these matters, al other Pumid  
beholding the earthe with sorrowfull countenaunce, and  
theyr mother Julia, spake as ensueth.

¶ We haue found out my sonnes, & he how to deuide Iullathe  
the land, & Sea betwixt you: and eyther of your bow: si. Empe-  
des, ye say, the Pontian sea dore sperate. But now, cos mo-  
hō wil ye deuide your Mother? or how shal I haue ther.  
funate creature be departed betwene you: ¶ ypte sea Herwo-  
me, and either of you, bury the part, he shall haue, ¶ I des vnto  
my selfe may also, wþ the Sea, & land, be dispeured be them.  
ewene you. When she had so layd, she layd her armes  
þpon their neckes, & embracyng them bothe, endeuored  
in al y she could, to reconcile the. ¶ wherfore, being  
moued to compassion, they lycenced every man to de-  
parte, wþout any finall, or determinate conclusiō,  
and them selues also, returned home. But their rācoz,  
and envy, increased daily. ¶ for wþe any Capitaines,  
& Magistrates, were elected, either of the brethre, ad-  
ded his own frende chiesly. ¶ when they late in iud-  
gement, they helde euer dyuerse opynions, to the in-  
tolerable damage, & losse, of the party, who had y mat-  
ter in controvrsye. They ompted besides no kynnes  
of secrete wyles, and encrappongys, labouryng to  
entysle eyther others Cookes, Kulators, and Copbe-  
vers, to povson theyr Mayster. ¶ The whiche endeuor-  
ers, when they proceaded not, as either would, for that  
they tooke theyr meate wþch greate watche, and dyli-  
gence, Anthonyne beyng impacient of delaye, and  
wycked wþch ambycyon of the hole Campye, deter-  
myned eyther to commyte, or suffer, some notable  
facynous facte. And therfore, he compassed the  
matter, wþch strengthe, and murder, for leyning that  
¶ illi. hys

## The Historic of Herodian.

hys priuyt attempts take none effecte, he thoughte it necessarye, lettynge all hope, and leave aparte, to sy-  
nysche his begon enterprize oute of hande. Therfore,  
sodeynlye breakyng open hys Wzothers Chaumbre

Geta doze, he molte cruelly there new hym, upon hys Wzoth-  
ers lap, wher he thought not of any suche mischier.  
hys Bro. The which dede, being accomplished, he immediatly  
ther An- lepte furthe, and runnyng through all the palayce,  
crysse. cryd, that he hadde wyth greate dysfycultye, escaped  
a maruaylouse daunger. And therewynt, he coman-  
ded the Souldeours of hys Garde, to safecoudyng  
hym furth wyth into the Campe, where he myghte a-  
byde in more suretye: sayinge that he shoulde perishe  
yl he remained any lengter in the Courte. And they  
credyng hys wordes, and beyng ignorant of that  
was happened wythin, accompanied hym, as he ran  
runnyng also. Thys moued a greate tumulte amon-  
ges the people, whyles the Prynce wente priuylye in  
the ryghte, through the myddes of the Cite. Alasone  
as he came unto the Campe, he entered into a lytell  
Chappell, wherein, the Signes, and Images of the  
host, were worshyped: and there fallyng prostrate,  
gau thankes wyth bowes, as yf they had beene for  
hys healthe. When the same was reported to the  
Souldeours, whereof some were washynge, and  
some other reposynge themselfes, they ran thypther  
as men amased, in dyuerse plummepes. And he, com-  
myng furthe into the myddes of them, dyd not at  
the fyre, open the matter throughlye, as it was com-  
myted, but cryd that he had escaped a maruaylouse  
daunger, and Treason, of a malchyouse manne, hys  
enemye, for so he named hys brother. And that wyth  
much dysfyculty, after longe stryfe, hys aduersaries  
were vanquished. For whyles they both contended,  
synallye, he was by the fauoure of fortune, leste onely  
Emperour. But in this darke & ouerthwart inueigh-  
yng of these woordes, he wylshed, rather to haue hys  
dede understanded, then openlye harde. Then for hys  
safetys obtainyd, he promysyd vnto euerye Soulde-  
oure, twng thousande, syue hundredyth grottes, and he  
alowyd

## The fourthe boke.

glotted them halfe as muche more byttarie, as they  
were accustomed to haue before that tym. He lys-  
tered them also, to rase them selfes, money out  
of the Temples, and Treasouryes, laupynghote out  
at large. In one daye, as muche as Scirurus had in  
twyl. yeares, gathered, and of other menses calamp-  
ters and mysteryes, heaped togþthers. The Soulde-  
ours, beyng wyth so greate abundance of mo-  
ney entyled, perceyvynge thole circumstaunce of the  
aforesayde murde, by thole that were fidele from  
the Courte, pronounced hym sole Emperour, and  
declared Geta a Traytor. Antonyne remayned the  
same nyghte in the Temple, and assayning hym selfe,  
in the rewardes, wherewith he had wonne the Soul-  
deours heartes, wente the nexte daye into the Se-  
nate house, beyng enuyoned wyth all the armes,  
and moze armure and weapons, then were accusto-  
med to garde the Prynce, beyng entered into the  
Senate, he made hys sacryfyc, and that eanded, he  
ascended thimperyal Throne, and made an Oacy-  
on, as foloweth.

**I** am not ignoraunte that every murde of a man. The oza-  
nes owne kynde, as soone as it entreth into the cyon of  
earies of others, wyll seame odysse, and the name Anto-  
nyne self, when it is heard, wil adde a maruaylous sciau nyne.  
For compallisid folowers, or bifornuncate, and en-  
uy pursueth the mighty. The vanquished is thought  
to receyue iniurie, and the Conquerour is supposed  
to committ wrotinge. But if any man wyll ponder the  
matter it selfe, rather with attentise Counsell, then  
any percial fauoure towardes hym that is dead, and  
exactly consider hys cause and entente, he shal easly  
synd that it is both iust and requylyte, to tenenge, ra-  
ther then to receive iniurie. For the infamye of tyme  
morumenes, doth ensue the calamity of the murdred,  
but the ouercommer, besydes that he is in safetys,  
doþe also beare awaie the renowne of foytitude.  
Now al other thinges the whiche he intended against  
me, wyth poysone, and al other kinde of Treason, it  
lyeth in youre handes, to waile oute by tormentes.  
D.iii. Therefore

## The Historie of Herodian.

Therefore perdyre, haue I commaunded all hys seruauntes to be here presence, that you may knowe & made the truthe. There be many of them already rackt, whose confession ye maye thoroughly heare. Finally, whyles I was wryth my Moother, he came vpon me, bringing in his company, many armed wryaples. But I knowig the matter before, reueged my self on mine enemy. For he neither bare any minde, nor per purposed anye thyng, pertayninge to a brother. And to destroy him, the which doth stell entede mischies, eue as it is rightfull, so is it also receaved in hys. For Nominus hym selfe, the bulder of this Citeye, forbare not his brother, which deluded hys workes of so greate importance. I onyghte Germanicus the brother of Nero, and Lycus the brother of Domitian. Marcus the philosopher, did not suffre y checkes of his Son in lawe. But I, in thauoyding of povson prepared againte me, and the swoorde that hengt ouer my sholders, haue slayne myne enemye: for that name, bathe he, throughe his deades deserued. Render you thankes vnto the Goddes, for that they haue preserued one Prince vnto you. And let not your myndes, be seured into sondry opinions, but obeyenge youre onely Emperour, lede your lyues hereafter in tranquilltie. For Jupiter, eue as he posseseth, the onely Empire, and dominion, amonges the Goddes, so hathe he appoynted, the same vnto one alone, amonges mortall men. After he had spoken thiese woordes, wryth loude voyce, full of yre, and cruell countenaunce, beholding the frendes of Geta, whyche trembled, and wares pale throughe feare, he retourned into the palacie. Furthewirth then, were the alyes, and frendes, of Geta, put to death, euen thole, which dwelt in the house, wryth hym, and all his seruauntes, so that the age of infantes, was not spared. Bysydes that, the deade karkalles, were layde in Cartes, for a reproche, casted oute of the Citeye, & there thrownen on heapes, and burned. Neþher suffered he to remayne alwyse, anþe one, which was but of lytle acquayntaunce with Geta. The wryslars, Carters, and Stage players, and synallye

Xonul<sup>o</sup>.The ex-  
treme  
Crueltie  
of Anco-  
nine.

## The fourthe booke]

Quallye alkynde of chynge, that was eyther grassefull or acceptable, to the eyes, or ears of Geta, were euerie where destroyed. And euerie Denatur, that excelled in nobilitie, signifie, or ryches, was putte to deathe, as his frendes vpon euerie male triffe: yea som tyme, without any cause, vpon every lyght accusacio. He caused to be slayne also the suster of Commodus, beinge herye aged, and thitherunto of all Emperors: entayned with great reverence, as it became the daughter of Marcus: takynge for occasion, that she had bewayled vnto hys moother, the death of Geta, and with her his owne wife the daughter of Plautianus, whiche before was sente into Cicilia, and a knyghtman of hys owne named, Seuerus, the sonne of Pertinax, and Lucilla the suster of Commodus. Finally, he roted out, as it were from the batom, euryone, whiche remained of the imperial blonde, or in the Senate, of the nobilitie. He commaunded also, all the rulers, and officers, of the Provinces, to be slain, as the frendes of Geta: so that all the ryghtees, were spent in murderynge, a myracious number of men. Yea, he buried quiche in the yearthe, the Westall vir. The beginnes, as thoughis they had violated their virginitie. Westall vir. Finally, that whiche never before was done, he committed. For whiles he was lokynge vpon the playes called Circenses, the people of Rome, repaynginge, I Circenses, knowe not howe, a certayne Carter, whome he atteyned yþ behelde, he takynge it for an obloquie towares hymselfe, furthwryth commaunded the whole armie, to runne vpon the people, and to spople, and slay euryone, that had spoken agaynst the Carter. And the sculdours, hauing once gotten licence of riding, and rabyng when they (whiche had spoken agaynst the Carter, coulde not be ayserned amonges the people, for no man woulde in that multitude, confesse the truthe) as they happened vpon anyeman, either newe hym, or elles, takynge them all captives, after they raunsome payed, dyd with great difficultie release them. When thiese chynges were finisched, Emperour syzed with remorse of hys exactions, and

P. 1.

### The Historie of Herodian

and detesting the livinge in the Citye, remoued from Rome, to set the Souldoys in order, and bisypte the provinces. After he was passed Italye, he wente unto the bankes of Danowle, the which are subiecte to the Romayne Empyre. There, wher he exercysed his bodye in Cartinge, or huncyng all kynde of wyldre beastes, or elles, late in iudgement: but that was very sealdome, after he had harde brytle of the matter. He there besydes, ioyned all the Germaynes into hys societie; so that of them, he elected every mosse haluaunte, & goodly of stature, for his companyons in warre, and garde of his persone. And oftentymes, layenge a syde the Romayne apparaile, he put on the Germanien garmet, and was sondry tymes seene in theyz Tassockes, embrodred with golde. He ware besydes on his head, a velowe bushe of here, rounded after the Germanouse, loured him exceedingly. The Romayne Souldoys also reioyled therat, because he gaue unto them sondry bountifull gestes. Hym selfe exercysed all the offices, of a priuate Souldour. For if there were any trenche to dygge, hym selfe syntesse dygged; anye vypoge to be made ouer a ryuer, any bulwarke to be buylded, or anye other handye worke, or labour; to be taken in hande, hym selfe syntesse enterpryzed the same: contyned alwaye with thynne sare, in cuppes, and byshes of woodde, eating continually course bredde. For he accurstis of stomed, to feade him selfe with a Cake of Rye, the whiche he grounde, and baked bypon the coles, wryt hys owne handes. Fynally, he reiected all wanton pleasures, and vsed symple thinges, appertayninge unto the pooreste common Souldoys. Besydes that, he had rather be called Companion, then Prince. And vsed to trauayle mosse commonlye on hys feete, as the Souldoys dyd, seldome ryding on horse, or in chariote, and alway bering his owne harneisse. Vea many times, he of Anto- ne, heuyly laden with pictures of golde, and scarcely light ynoughe, for the strogiest Souldoys. For thiese, and other

The so- briete of Antoni- che he grounde, and baked bypon the coles, wryt hys owne handes. Fynally, he reiected all wanton pleasures, and vsed symple thinges, appertayninge unto the pooreste common Souldoys. Besydes that, he had rather be called Companion, then Prince. And vsed to trauayle mosse commonlye on hys feete, as the Souldoys dyd, seldome ryding on horse, or in chariote, and alway bering his owne harneisse. Vea many times, he of Anto-

nyne. ynoughe, for the strogiest Souldoys. For thiese, and other

### The southe booke.

cher semblable thinges, did hys army loue hym, as a warrelyke personage, and maruayle at hym, as a baysant Capitaine. For it seemed a miracle unto them, that a man of so lytle stature, was able to endure so greate labours. When he had establisched some Souldoys at Danowle, and passed into Thracie, which boundeth vpon the Macedonyens, furthwith he became another Alexander. For he renewed the memorie of the same kyng, by all the meeres he coulde deuyse: com- mounding his vimages to be erected, in every towne, and repairevshing Rome selfe, the Capitole, and all Capitols the Temples, with the statues of Alexander. And then sawe many vimages sooully wroughte, that bare in one body two faces, of Alexander, and Antonyne: who weare abroade, in the Macedonyen apparayle, wear- ring a diademe on his heads, and slippers on his feate. He named a chosen company of yong men, the Macedonien Phalanix: commaundinge his Capitaines, to take unto them, the names of Alexanders Chieftaines. And the yong me, which he had sent for out of Sparta, he called y Laconike, & Pitanyte Ceterie. Wher he Pitaniere had ended thiese thinges, fordered euerie Certe, as he myght, he made a retage vnto Bergam, a Certe of A Berga- sia, w he myght vsse some of Asculapius phisicks. And mis. wher he was ther arriu'd, after he had recreated hi selfe, w sufficiet sleape, he remoued to Troye, visited all the Troye. olde monumenteres of the Certe, & wente unto Achilles Countre. And hauyng sumptuously decked the same, w flowres, & Garlades, he began of newe to counterfayte Achylles. But as he wylshed, for some one lyke bnts Patroclus, his dearest frydertine named Festus, whiles he sojourned at Troye, deceased: dispatched, as some thought, w poiss, y he myght be buried as Patroclus was: but as other affirme, evinck w sicknes. His Patro- body, did Antonine comayre to be brought fourthe, & clus. y place wher it shuld be burned, to be piled with much woodde. And putting the corps, into v middes therof, & sacrificyng diuerle beastes, he threlo fire into it, holding a glasse in his hande, dranke of the wynne therin, makynge petition vnto the wyndes. And

P. 1.

## The Historie of Herodian

And beinge somewhat halde, whē he sought sor heare,  
to laye into the fyre, it became a sporke, vnto all that  
were present: yet at the last, he notred of thole heares  
he had. Chiesly amonges al valiaunt men, he praised  
Sylla the Romain, and Hannibal the Aphyricano,  
whose Image he also erected. After he was departed  
from Troye, he passed ouer all Asye, Bythynye, and  
the other adiacente countreyes. And hauinge set syper  
in hys esfaires, euerye where, he wet vnto Antioche,  
where he was receyued verye honorably, and taryed  
a litle while. From thence he remoued to Alemandry,  
clokyng this voyage, with pretence of desyre, to see  
the Cittie, buylded by Alexander, and to consulte with  
the God of that countrey, whome the inhabitauntes  
do greatly worship. Faining these two causes, he co-  
maunded first autters, for sacrifice to be erected, with  
all kinde of funeral celebration, to the honour of their  
God, and the memorie of Alexander. When this was  
declared vnto the Alemandren multitude, beinge na-  
turally chaungeable, with euerye trifle, they al toge-  
ther, as it were men distracte of theyz wyttes, rejoy-  
sed at the prynces wyll, and beneuolence.  
And prepared them selues, to receaue hym more ho-  
norably, then ever they dyd any other Emperoure.  
For all kynde of musicall instrumentes, mette him in  
his passage, making a wonderfull melodious sowne.  
Besides that, al the gates, and stretes, being repleni-  
shed with the flauour of splices, and perfumes, they  
welcomed hym with bonefyres, & strowing of floures  
in hys waye. After his entrie into the Cittie, he syssse  
visyted the Temples, & when he had there offred ma-  
ny sacrifices, and heaped the autters, whch franken-  
put of his owne robe of purple, hys rynges adorned  
with precious stones, his gyrdle, & all his other good-  
ly ornamentes, and layed the same vpon the Tombe.  
The Alemandriens beholding al these thinges, rejoyced  
wonderfulllye, and made fest, bothe nyght, and daye,  
throughout the Cittie, beyng ignorant, what was  
bydde in the Emperours cancarde stowacke.

Fox

## The fourthe booke

Fol. lii.

For theise thinges did he, thrughe subtyltye, so shen-  
tent, he might flee, all the multitude togithers. The  
cause of his priuey indignacio, and grudge, was this.

It was reported vnto hym at Rome, that whyleas hys  
father lyued, and after his death, the Alemandriens, had  
bluffed out many opprobrioule wordes against him.

For in deade, ther are of nature, talkatyng people, fa-  
thynd to mocke, and scoyne, all others, babelynge  
against every noble man, and chyestly wyth quyppes,  
and tauntes, as them selfes thinke, pleiaunt, & were  
but those, by whō ther are spoken, accompte them ve-  
rie odious, & bitter. For of suche scoffes, those, wherid  
wyce is reproued, doo sourest Ilyre anger. Wherefore  
when they had spoken many thinges agaynste Anto-  
nyne, not kepyng in sylence, the murder of hys Bro-  
ther, commonly callyng his Mother Jocasta, & scor-  
ning him, because that beyng of so lytle stature, he Jocasta.

woulde seame to counterfaite Alexander, and Achil-  
les, whych e were moste valiaunte, and mighty Cap-  
taines, ther so encensed hym, beyng alreadye of hys  
owne nature, yrons, and blodochiriche, that he fullye  
determined, their death, and destruction.

When he had therefore fynished this laste rehersed solemnnitie, and  
seasse, sayng so great a multitude of the next nations,  
resorting vnto the Cittie, he commaunded by procla-  
macion, that all the Alemandren youthe, shuld assem-  
ble into a terrayne syelde, without the walles: promp-  
tynge, that as he had of the Macedonyen, and Spar-

ayne yonge men, euen so wold he of them, constitute  
a square battell, called Phalaur, in the honoure, and  
remembraunce, of Alexander. When ther were so as-  
sembled, he commaunded them, to seperate themselves

in bandes, a greate space one from an other, that he  
mighthe electe oute of them, the ayestle ages, statures,  
and personages, for the warres. The yonge men cre-

ditynge the same, and perswaded wyth a coloure of  
trathe, thrughe the greate honoure, he had before the-  
wed towardes theyz deade Prince, resorted thither in

many compaynes, bringinge with them, their parenes  
and Bretherne, with io yonge acclamacio, & shoutes.

P. 19.

The ii.

The oc-  
cation of

Antoni-  
nes hate-

the Ale-  
driens.

### The historie of Herodian

Then Antonine went aboute che compayne, bewising them, and p[ro]faisinge this and that, in euerie one as he liked, until his whole host had compassed them unwarres, and looking for no such thinge. And when he perceaved them al to be enclosed with his armie, & entangled, as it were with nettes, him self came furth with his garde, and gaue a watche word vnto the Souldours: who furthwith ran vpon the people, and slewe with meruaylous slaughter, the naked, and unarm'd youth, & al other that wer present. Of the Souldours, some were occupied in murdering onely, other some buried the deade corpses, in huge pyttes, & coueringe them with earth againe rased a meruaylous highe hil: Many were drawen half dead into y pittes, & many were buryed quicke. There perished besides very manyn of the Souldours them selves. For they, whiche had any breth remaining, and not fully lost theyr natural strength, clipping the Souldours, which ranne vpon them, drewe the same also, into the pittes wth them. And there was so great a murdre committed, that wth streames of bloud, which ranne alonge the playnes, not onely the mouthe of Nylus, but also the Sea by the Cittie, became red of colour. Thys eanded, Antoinye affecting the Parthyane surname, and rounyme of Thoriental conquest, (although the people were nowe in perfecte peace) inuincit this craste. He wrate letters vnto Artabanus king of Parthia, and sent vnto him Ambassadours, wth sondrie sumptuous giftes. In those letters he wrate, that he wold take to wife the kinges daughter, for y him self was a prince, and a princes sonne. And therfore it besemed not hys estate, to become son in law, of any priuate or meane persone, but rather to mary a Ducene, or the doughter of a great and puissant king. He alledged, that the Empires of Rome, and Parthia, being the st. mightiest of the world, shoulde by this affinitie ioyne togidhers, and no ryuer disparteynge them, be of so great strenght, that it were impossible, for any forreyne power, to baynquishe them. For quod he all the Barbarous nations, whiche are nowe subiecte, vnto both

Fol. lxxii.

Letters sent vnto Artabanus.

### The fourthe booke

Fol. lxxiii.

these Empires, wyl easly contynue in subjection, when euery of them, shal haue theyr owne rulers, and gouernours. The Romaynes, he assyned, had an armie of sole men, the whiche wth speares, and in playne battayle, excelled all other. And the Parthians had a greate power of horsemen, and expert archers. Wherefore, these chynges ioyned toghers, and agreinge in one, they shoulde (he sayde) easly retayne, vnder one Scepter, and Diademe, the Empire of the whole worlde. The pleasaunte spyces, and synne clothe also, whiche came from thence, to the Romaynes, and the goodly metall, and all curios wroughte thynges, which were transported from the Romains to them agayne, shoulde not after thys mary age be seldomie caried, as it was wont by marchauntes, but thuse therof, shoulde be in common to them, without let or interruption, in one land, and vnder one gouernour. After the Parthian kunge, had receaued these letters, he syde denied the request, saying, that a barbarous matrimony became not a Romaine. For what concord (quod he) woulde be betwene them, whiche used not one language, nor one kind of living, & appayzel. There were (he sayde) at Rome manye Senatours daughters, amonges whome the Emperoure might chose hym a wyse: as there were, in hys dominion, certayne called Arslide. Neþher was there anye caule, he thoughte, why anye of them, shoulde be alienated from theyr native countrey. Wth thys auctorite, he repulsed the Emperours suye. But Antoinye, neþer leste of sendyng manye gyltes, and promysyng by othes, hys perfecte loue to wardes hys daughter, vntyll the Barbarous prynce beleyng hys wordes, promised to geue hym hys daughter to wyse. When the same of thys was spredde, all the Barbarous people prepared themselues to receaue the Romayne Emperoure, reioysyng wth a certayne hope, of contynall peace thereafter.

P. lxxii.

Then

Arsacide.

### The historie of Herodian

Then Antonine, hauing passed without let, or stafe, of anye man, the Riuers, entred into the Parthian Region, and rode throughe the same, as hys owne. And in hys waye, all the people, celebrateth sacryfices burning encense, vpon the decked Aultares, wherwith he sayned hym selfe, to be greatly pleased. After a lige tyme, he approuched at the lasse, rynghe the Palacie of Artabanus: Who met wþ him, in a certaine plaine before the Cytte, to receaue hym, as a newe Bryde-grome, and hys Sonne in lawe. And a greate multy-tude of the Barbarous people, crowned wþ theyr countrey floures, and apparayled in garmentes, adorned wþ golde, and bawbare colours, celebrated the same, as a feaste, and solempnytye, daunsynge togithers, by the sounde of Pypes, and Tabors. For in those instrumentes, they are aboue measure delyted, especially, when thei are ones wel typled with wine. But when all the multy-tude, were assembled togythers, and hauing leste their horses behinde, and laide aside their bowes, and arrowes, applyed them selfes to banquetynge, and gatheringe togither in a rude plumpe, strode withoute order, whyles thei suspected no harme, but every man, thursting forwardes, to see the newe marped man, Sodeynly, Anthonyne wþ a preuy sygne, commannded all hys men, to slea, and destroy the Barbarous people. They, beyng astonyshed with that sodeyne chaunce, turned theyr backes, and fledde from the Romaynes whiche pursued, and dewe them. Artabanus hym selfe, beyng socoured, and set vpon a horse, by some of hys Garde, dyd wþ greate difficultye escape. But the residue of þ Parthians were every where ouerthowen, and murdereed. For thei neither had their horses, whiche thei most vsed (thei hadde perdy sente theim before to grasse) neyther coulde thei flee: for theyr wyde garmentes, hangynge downe to theyr heales, interrupted theyr runnyng. Thei broughte not besydes theyr bowes, and arrowes, with them, for what neaded that at a Parthiens, and a greate boþye of men, and beastes, taken

### The fourthe boke

Fol. lll.

taken captyues, and ledde awaye, Anthonyne departed. And withoute any resystance, burned the towernes, and vyllages, geaung lycence vnto his Souldours, to ransake, and spoyle, all that they woulde, or could. This mischies, & calamitie, did the Parthiens, twwares, receiue. Then Anthonyne, hauing byseted the inwardre partes of Parthia, and his Souldours beyng weryed, w rappine, and murder, retourned in, to Mesopotamye. From thence, he sygnified vnto the Senate, & people of Rome, that he had subdued Thoriante, and brought in subiectiōn, all the men of those Regios. The Senate, (albeit thei before knewe perfectly the hole circumstaunce, for Princes affayres, can by no meanes, contynew longe, in hugger mugger) yet through feare, and flaterye, decreed all honours of victorie, vnto hym. After this, Antonine sortoured in Mesopotamie, gyving hym selfe, to Carting, and hunting of wylde bestes. There were two generall Capitaines of his armie, Audentius, & Maerinus, of the whiche the one was aged, rude, & blunteshe, but yet, experice in warfare. And the other, alius, Maerinus, way exercysed, in matters of the lawe, and therin ex-actly learned. This man, the Prince vsed to taunte, & checke openly, as a man nothing valiaunte, or apt to warre. For hearing that he fedde very delycately, and reected thole symple, and warlycke meates, whiche Anthonyne vsed, and that he ware a gowne, and other decente apparelle, lyke vnto a Cytizen, he reproched hym, as a womanly person, threateninge ostentynes to kyll hym. Mactynus beyng therof impatient, was furred with meruaylouse anger. Thereunto happened this chaunce: it was perdie expediet, that Antonine, shoulde ones synghe hys lyfe. For beyng of hys owne nature, ouer curiouse, he studayd, not onely, to knowe the priuary affayres of men, but also, to sechoute, the secretes, of the Goddes, and Dyuels. And through continual feare of Treason, consulted with many oracles, and recayned aboute him, diuerse Magiciens, Astrologiens, and Soothsayers, omptting no creature, whiche professed thole fantasies, and pilis-

Mesapo tamye.

N. i.

ENG.

## The historie of Herodian

Paterni  
anus.

ons. But suspecting them also, as lyers, and Prophetes of flattery, he accustomed to wryte, vnto one Maternianus in the Citie: vnto whome he had committed, the charge of all hys affayres, and hym amoles all his frindes, he had chosen, for the trustieste, & pertaker, of all his secrete counselles: willing him, to sende for the besse Magiciens, from all partes, and cōsulte with them, of thende of his lyfe, and whether any man, wente abouthe by treason, to obtayne thempyre. Maternianus, (having accōplished, his P̄zinc̄es commaundemente (whether the Magiciens tolde hym so, or elles bycause he hated Macrinus, wrote a gayne vnto Antoinye, that Macrinus conspyzed Treason against him, and that it was expedyente, to rydde hym oute of the waye. And theise letters sealed with other, as the blage was, he deluyered to Purse-nautes, who were ignozaunt, of that they hadde in hande. The same, (hauyng ended their iorney, with accustomed celerite) came vnto Antoinye, when he prepared hym selfe, to Carteng, and was alredy ascēded his Chariot. Then delivred thei vnto him thole Packquet of Lettres, amonges the which were thei also, that touched Macrinus. But Antoinye, beyng at that tyme fully bente to Carteng, cōmaunded Macrinus, that he shold open, and peruse the Letters, and, ys there were any matter of importaunce, in the contained, make relacion therof, vnto hym agayn. If not, he shold execute, his owne office of P̄zorship. For so at other tymes, he was accustomed, to commaunde hym in semblable causes. Hym selfe then departed, towardes hys pastyme. And Macrinus, haueing vnsealed, & severally perused, the Letters, hapened on the same, that mocioned his destruction. Then understanding the greate mischiefe, that henge ouer hys heade, & knowing also Antoinynes wrathe, and outragioouse cruelty, specially, when he shoulde haue suche occasion, he kepte backe, the same Lettre, and of the resse, declared the contentes, vnto Themperour. But yet, fearing leste Maternianus, woulde effsones certeyne the Emperour, of the same matter, he determined, to commyt somme acte fourthwyth,

## The fourthe boke

Fol. iv.

rather than in delayeng tyme, hym self shold perissh. And therfore, thus cōcluded. Ther was a certaine C̄eturio named Martialis, one of Antonines priuey chā Marcia, ber, accustomed alwaies, to be next attendant, on his lis. persone: Whose brother, Antonine had put to death, vpo simple accusaciō, wout leful iudgement, & vled of tentymes, to checke Martialis himself, callinge hym cowarde, & cōfederate of Macrinus. This mas sorow for y death of his brother, Macrinus throughly perceiuing, & knowing also, how he was sufficietly syzred to malice by his own reproches, called y same, as one alredy bounde, by his manifolde benefites, vnto him. And perswaded him, y as sone, as he could finde oportunitate, he shold seele Antonine. Martialis, beinge w his promises allured, & throughe his owne grudge, to the reuenge of hys brothers death, already enflamed, promised to accomplish his minde, whē time coueniet shold serue. And truly, it chaunsed shortely after. For Antonine, soiorning at Carre a Citie of Mesapo. Carre tamie, visited y Temple of Diana: y which, being nigh Mesapo, vnto the Citie, is there of the inhabitautes, hadde in camp, great honour, and reuerente. Thither he went, with a few horsemen, leuing the armie behinde him: for after he had finyshed his sacrifice, he purposed, to returne vnto y Citie again. And in the midde waye, being accōpanied w one seruaunt, & hauing cōmaunded the resse, to staye aside, he wēt, to do the requisites of nature. Then Martialis, (which awaited every conuenient howre) sayng the Emperour alone, & all other farre of, made haste towardes him, as though he were called for some busynesse, & running vpon him vntwarres, as he was vntrussing his pointes, stabbed him in w a dagger, which he of purpose, secretly bare in hys sleave. And y same sliding in betwene y short ribbes, gave vnto Antonine, being unarmed, a mortal, & dead wounde, whereof he furthid died. That done, Martialis lept vpo his horse, & beāg to flee. But y Germane horsemen, (whō Antonine entierly loued, & had appointed for the garde of his person) being then nearer y place, then y resse, & seinge y same murder, pursued Martialis w maine gallop, & slew him w their dardes. His slaine

## The historie of Herodian

when the residue of the hoste heard therof, thei ranne together furthly to the Emperours dead corps: vpon the whiche Macrinus syrfe of all fell, and fayned, to lament it exeadynglye. Thys chaunce, was dolorouse vnto the Souldours, who accompted them selues bereft, not onelye of theyz Soueraigne, but also of theyz Companion in armes. Neþher dyd they suspecte Macrinus, for they supposid, that Martialis had committed the murder, for the reuenge of hys owne priuate iniuries. Wherfore, every man deþred to hys owne cabban. And Macrinus, haþynge burned the body of Antonyne, sent the ashes vnto his Moþher, to burye. She then soþozned at Antioche, where anone after, ( were it of her owne minde, or by anye mans compulsion) for the calamities of her chylđren, she slewe her selfe. Thys eande of theyz lyues, had Antonyne, & his mother Julia, after they had lyued, as we before reþersed, and he raignid syre yeres alone, withoute hys father, and brother. Antonyne being thus slayne, the Souldours, vnderpayne what they myght doo, abode two dayes, without a pryncipe, consultyng, whome they myght syrfe electe for Emperoure. For they hearde, that Artabanus was commynge agaynst them, with a great army, to reuenge the deaþe of hys subiectes, whiche were slayne in the tyme of peace. Wherefore, they chose syrfe for Emperoure, Audentius, a man experie in warfare, and a poltyke Captayne. But he excusynge him selfe, through hys age, refused thempire. Then with one consent, thei elected Macrinus, through the persuasions of the Tribunes (who, as the suspition after rose, were consentyng to the murder of Antonyne, and pertakers of Macrinus cōspiracie) as I shall at large hereafter declare. Then Macrinus receaued Thempire, not for any cōfidece, he had in the Souldours, but constrained therunto, through necessitie, and the present state of theyz affaires. Whyles theise thynges were in doyng, tydypnges came vnto them, that Artabanus was even at hand, wyth a wondersull puþlaunce of men, amonges

Antoni-  
es mo-  
ther  
slew her  
selfe.

Antoto-  
ny raig-  
ned alone  
vi. yeres.  
Artaba-  
nus was  
myghty  
army, to  
reuenge  
the deaþe  
of hys  
subiectes,  
whiche  
were slayne  
in the tyme  
of peace.  
Where-  
fore, they  
chose  
syrfe  
for  
Emperoure,  
Audentius,  
a man  
experie  
in warfare,  
and a  
poltyke  
Captayne.  
But he  
excusynge  
him selfe,  
through  
hys age,  
refused  
thempire.  
Then with  
one consent,  
thei elected  
Macrinus,  
through  
the persua-  
sions of  
the Tribunes  
(who,  
as the  
suspition  
after rose,  
were  
consentyng  
to the  
murder  
of Antonyne,  
and  
pertakers  
of Macrinus  
cōspira-  
cie) as I  
shall at  
large  
hereafter  
declare.  
Then  
Macrinus  
receaued  
Thempire,  
not for  
any  
cōfidece,  
he had  
in the  
Souldours,  
but  
constrained  
therunto,  
through  
necessitie,  
and the  
present  
state  
of theyz  
affaires.  
Whyles  
theise  
thynges  
were  
in  
doyng,  
tydypnges  
came  
vnto  
them,  
that  
Artabanus  
was  
even  
at  
hand,

Macri-  
nus toke  
the rule  
of thim-  
pire vp  
by him.

the

## The fourthe boke.

the whiche, he hadde broughte a greate numbre of horsemen, Archers, & men at armes, vpon Camelles, whiche bled to syghte, wyth longe speres. Macrinus hearinge therof, called all the armye togþthers, and made this oracion vnto them.

**C**It is not to be meruailed, that you are dolorouse, The oracion for the deaþe, of such a pryncipe, or (as I maye more truly saye) such a companion. But it is the property of wylle men, to sustayne moderatly, all mortall calamities. The memorie of him, shall continually be fyréd in your hartes, and by you, leste vnto you posteritee, wyth an eternall commendacion, of the valiaunt actes, by hym attayned. Wsydes that, of hys loue towardes you, and hys partakinge of youre paynefull trauayles, whyles he lyued. But nowe, the tyme, and case requyret, that after hys funeralles with due honoure parfourmed, we prepare our selues, to resytle the daunger imminent. We see the Barbarouse king at hande, with a wonderfull multitude of the oþer tales, having, as it seameth, iuste occasion of warre.

For we syrfe prouoked them, with breche of our promise, and mouing war against them, when thei were in quiete tranquylltie. All the Romayne Empyre, & Strengþ, lyeth in your valiaunt prowesse, and fauful allegaunce. We doo not nowe contend, for oure owne boudes, and Kyuerse, with a mighty, and puþlaunte kynge: but we muste nowe syghte, for the saufarde of our owne lyues, and all ours, seynge he is come, to reuenge the murder, of his chylđren, kyndred, and subiectes, (who were by vs slaine (as he thinketh), contrarie to all equitie, and truelþ. Wherefore, lette vs nowe fall to Armes, and (as the Romaynes are accustomed) obserue a iuste order, in oure batayles. For the Barbarouse multytude, beyng rude, and oute of order, may happen thereby, to do them selues damage. But your order, agremente, and knowledge in warrefare, as they defende your saufegarde, evyn so, doo thei woorke youre enemyes destruction. I would therfore, that you shoulde with haulte courage, and hope of victorie, so syghte, as it becommeth Romaynes.

## The Historie of Herodian.

mains: & as you haue continually hitherto done. So shall ye not onely vanquysh the Barbarous people, but also, hauyng obtained a famous renowned glorie, adde vnto the Romaynes, and all other, a perfecte confidence, that the former Conquest wasacheued, not by fraudulente disceyte, but by notable valiauncies, and strengthe. When he had thys muche spoken, the Souldours perceauynge the resistyng presente, fell vnto armes, and set them selues in order of battayle. At the rylyng of the Sonne, they sawe Artabanus, marchyng forward with an huge armye. And assone as the Barbarous people had, accordinge to theyr usage, worshyped the Sonne, furthwith, they ran at the Romaynes, wyth a mightie, and clamorous shoute, shoting from their horses, manye arrowes, and dartes. But the Romaynes (having strongly planted theyr fronte, distributed the Maurytanian horsemen, on eyther syde, and receaued into the mids of theyr battaile, the Dimilauaces, and lyght horsemen) resisted valiaunclye the Barbarous people at the fyre, the which bered them greuously, with the multitude of arrowes, & longe speares, wher with the men at armes that rode on Camelles, & horses, foughte and skirmished. On thorher syde, the Romaines (as ofte as they moued forwardes) easelye obtained the better. But when they wer oppressed with the Barbarous horsemen, & Camelles, faining to flee, they planted Caltrops, & other engins of wron, Sharpe at thone eand in y groud. The whiche beyng hid vnder the sand, & seen of no man, were very pernicious, vnto the horsemen, & those that rode vpo the Camelles. For, after that they were fallen, on the same Caltropes, the horses, and specially the Camels (for that the same beast hath very tender hoofes) became furthwith lame, and ouerthrew theyr riders. The Barbarous people, as long as they late on their horses, and Camelles, fought very fiercly. But when they eyther alighted, or were ouerthrown, they were easelye taken. For then, they durst not abide the battayle. And yl they shold flee, or pursue theyr enemies, thei were

Interrup:

## The fourthe boke.

Fol. lvii.

interrupted, with longe and wyde garmentes, retchyng downe to theyr heelles. The battayle continued two dayes, from morwyng to nyghte. The nyghte A longe scuered them, and eyther armye retourned into their Campes, as Conquerours. The thyde day, they met in the playne, pelle, to daraigne battayle. Then the Barbarous people, attempted, as thole whiche were many more in number, to compasse the Romains, and entangle them, as it were, in a nette. But the Romaynes, seynge the same, ioyned not together, in a rounde compasse, but set them selues in a longe front, that they myghte thereby, prohibyte the compassyng of theyr enemies. And there was so great a multitude of men, and beastes, slayne, that all the fielde, was ouerwhealmed wyth them: and a wonderfull number of dead carcases, were heaped in greate heigthe, ouerespecially of Camelles, the whiche laye one vpon another. Wherby, there was not scope poung, for the Souldours to fyghte. For so manye carcases were heaped togethers, that they coulde scarscelye moue to and fro. Wherfore, they retayzed into theyr campes. Powe Macrinus, knowyng that the Barbarous kyng foughte so vehemently, for none other cause, but that he thoughte, Antoinye to be presente, in the battayle, sente certayne Ambassadours, vnto hym wyth letters (for althoughe the Barbarous people, are accustomed after a lytle skympshyng, to were saynte, and werpe, and to leus of theyr begonne enterprise, ys at the fyre bronte, it prospereth not, accordyng to theyr myndes: yet then they persisted, readye to renewe the fyghte, as soone as they had burned the dead bodyes, beyng ignoraunte, that he was dead, whiche had caused thys myschiese, and calamite) in the whiche letters, he certfyfed hym, that the Emperoure was deade, and hadde receyued condigne punishmente, for the violatyng of his othe, and promise: And that the Romaynes, had delyuuered the Empyre, and gouernance of all assayres, into his handes, who was wonderfullye displeased, wyth the thynges alreadye done.

D.iii.

Wherfore

## The Historie of Herodian.

Wherfore he woulde deliuer the captiues, and all other spoyles, he had taken: couetynge of hys enemys to become his confederat, and friend, and to establishe truce betwene them, by othe, & sacrifice. After these letters were redd, and Artabanus aduertised by the Ambassadors, of the death of Antoinye, accompting that he which had broken the peace, was sufficiencly punyshed, and beyng contente, that the prsoners, shoulde be restored, without more effusion of bloude, and with them all the pray, and botie, he tooke agreement, and truce with Macrinus, and retourned towardes hys owne palacie. And the Romaine Emperour led hys armye oute of Mesopotamie, and marched to Antioche.

## The ende of the fourth booke.

## The Argumente of the fift booke of the Herodian.



He fift booke reciteth the causes, for the whiche Macrinus, lost the fauor of the Souldiers; who chace Bassianus Emperour, & named him Antoinye. The battailes made agaynste Macrinus, the ouerthowle of hym, and his armye, with hys death. And thinsolence of Antoinye, after he was Emperour. And how he adopted his colyn Alexander, otherwise named Alexander, and made hym hys felowe in the Empire. And finallye it telleth the causes, wherfore, and how, Antoinye and Hocmis hys Moother, were slayne.

## The fyfte booke of the Historye of Herodian.

Fo. lviii.



E haue in the former Booke, treated, of the Raigne, death, & destrucciō, of Anthoine. When Macrinus was come vnto Antioche, he sente letters vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, in thys forme.

Forasmuche, as your selfes perfectlye knowe, what hath bene the trade Macrinus vnto my lyfe from the beginning, howe muche my mātērnes haue bene bente vnto gentlenes, and what cle- mency I haue shewed towards you, in that my dygnitie, whiche dyffered not muche from the hygheste rype of dominion, (for Thumperour alwaies committeth the custodye of him selfe, vnto the fidelytie of hys Pretor) I thinke it superfluous, vse to many wordes vnto you. Your selfes are not ignorant, þ I allowed not, the thiges by Anthoine done: wherby for your sakes, I was ofte in peril of my life:whiles he, geuig credit vnto euery dñiu ste accusation, as a man void of reason, imagined your hole destruction, he vled to checke me ofte times, vþbrayding me openly for my modest humanytie, and calling me sluggard, & cockney. For beinge a man delited wð flattery, whoso euer incensed him to flagitiouse crueltie, or prouoked to malice þ furious sesualitie, of his fraticke brayne, or els sturred wð accusations, hys erasperate madnes, thole he accompted, his most trasty, lecrete, and faithfull frenches. But for my part, there hath bene nothing more acceptable vnto me from the begynninge, then discrete modestie. We haue now so finished, this mercelous Parthian warre, wherin thole Romaine Emperour stode in hasarde, that beyng nothing inferioure

R. i.

in

The Historie of Herodian

in syghte, vnto our aduersaries, we haue made theyr  
mighty king, of an extreme enemy, our fauful frēde:  
Who brought against vs, an innumerable multycole  
of people. Further, whiles I am your Prince, ye shal  
lyue frealy, wout trouble of discencion. So y, ye shal  
haue cause, to name my gouernance, rather a cōfesse-  
racy of good mē, then an Empire. Neither is ther any  
occasion, why any man shuld iudge me vnworthy to  
be Emperour, or impute it to anye faulte of fortune,  
that being but a Knight, I haue attained the Princi-  
pall Soueraignite. For of what effecte, or value, I  
praye you, is y the nobilityt it selfe, yf it be not cōfioy-  
ned wō gētle, & meeke clemencie? And the gyftes of for-  
tune, doo bewisye many vnworthily; but y vertue of  
the minde, bringeth vnto every man, vsing the same,  
a peculier glorie. And although the nobilityt of byzith,  
& kinred, w abundance of treasure, is accempted the  
proper substancialle, of blessed men, yet are not y same  
in them cōmēded, as frō them selfes issuing, but as de-  
livered of others. But gentlemekenes, & modest assa-  
bility, as thei be to be wōdred at, so doo thei win much  
prapse, vnto the hauer. For what profited you, the no-  
bilityt of Cōmodus, & the successio of Anthōnīne, af-  
ter his father: Certes, such hauing obtained thepice,  
as it were, their iust inheritaunce, are wonte to abuse  
it, as their p̄viate patrimony. But thei, whiche re-  
ceave the same at your handes, being as it were, bōu-  
den of dutie vnto you, endeavour them selfes, to requit  
your manifolde benefites. Further y natuue nobilitie  
of Princes, chāgeth oftē times into p̄yde, despysig al  
others, as their inferiorz. But thei, whiche haue obtai-  
ned y same, throughe profe of modesty, do desēd, & ordre  
it, as a thing gōtē by laboz, & haue al those ireuerece,  
which thei had beforeze time. And I for my part, am ful-  
ly determined, to do nothing, wout your cosel, & anc-  
thority, & to ble you, as sole assūtautes, & Consayllorzs  
in thaffaires of y cōmē wealth. And ye shall al lyue, at  
your own pleasures, wō the same libertye, (whiche be-  
inge by yōge Empers, succeeding their parētes, takē  
away frō you) both Marcus, & Pertinar, endeouored, &  
intended

The fyfte booke.

Fol.lix,

entēded, to restore vnto you again. Both the which, as  
pired to thepice, frō p̄viate estate, & degree. For it is  
much better so; a mā, to leue vnto his posteritie, y be-  
ginninge of his kynred, by him selfe adorned, then to  
desile w̄ sensuall maners, y nobilitie vnto hym from  
his predecelloz, descended. After this Epistle was red,  
al thole Senate with one voice, decreed the honour of  
Augustus, vnto Macrinus. Neither was the Senate  
so soyfull, w̄ the successio of Macrinus, as the cōmon  
people were glad, w̄ the death of Anthōnīne. For eue-  
ry mā (as he excelled in auctoritie, & riches, so much  
the more he reckened, y he had auoided y sworde, whi  
the beforez hēge ouer his sholders. Then wer al exhibed  
Promotors, Accuslers, & Servantes, whiche had be-  
traied their Masters, & Lordz, hāged vpo Gibbettes.  
And al thole Citie, yea, thole Romaine Empire, was  
cōfused, of al false Harlotes, Macabūdes, & Pikehākes  
Of y which, som were out of hād put to deathe, other  
somie punished w̄ banyshemēt. And yf any of the lave-  
nid, for feare of good meny wer now at rest, y same shē  
wed som apparaunce of liberti, by the space of one yere  
In y which onely Macrinus enjoyed thepice. For that Thefaulē  
was his only fault, y he furthwō dismissed not thole ar of Macri-  
nus, & hauing set every mā to his own Cōtrey, him self nūs.  
cānot immediatli to Rome, which was veri desirous  
of him, (the people eueri day looking, & callig for him.)  
But he remained at Antioche, in delicate lyfe, & vled a  
lower pace in going, thē he was beforeze accustomed,  
gēuing answer rarely, & scarcely, vnto Ambassadoz,  
& other persons, y cam vnto him, & the same w̄ so low  
a voice, y none could well vnderstād him. And in y do-  
yngē, he endeouored, to folow Marcus, but to the resy-  
dew of his condicions, he did in no point attaine. For  
he vled daily volupteuse diet, taking pleasure in daū-  
syngē, and wasselyng, neglectinge the regimēte of  
thempyre, & wearing Agglets of Golde, & a Gyrdle a-  
dorned with precious stones. The which sumptuous  
aparaile, was nochig gratefull vnto the Souldioz.  
For thei esteemed it more congruente, to the Barba-  
rous people, and women, then to theyr Prince.

X.ij.

Wherfore

## The Historie of Herodian

Wherfore, in beholding thiese thinges, thei greatly reproued it, and despysed the trade of hys lyfe, as a thing more wanton, then became a warlyke person. And they compared the wanton sensualitie of Macrinus, and the wyttie, and warlyke maners of Antonine. Further, they greatlie grudged, that they laye syll in the Campe, farre fro their native Country, ostentymes wanting their necessary foode, and were not discharged home, after peace made, & truce taken, whiles he, led hys lyfe in Wanton pleasures.

**Phe**nicia. **H**erodias, **M**oela, **C**mesa. **S**oemis, **P**ammea, **B**assian, **A**lexian, **H**eleogabalus. **T**here was a certen Phenicien woman, named Moela, boorne in a Citye of Phenicia called Cmesa, Huster unto Julia the wyfe of Seuerus, & Mother of Anthonine. Who during the Raigne of Seuerus, and Anthonine, and the lyfe of Julia, had dwelte in thempours Palayce. The same Moela, after the death of her Huster, and murdre of Anthonyne, Macrinus had commaunded, to returne into her owne Countrey, w all her substance. And in sothe, she was wonderfull ryche of money, as one whyche of verye longe tyme, had bene brought vp within thimperiall Treasourie. And being retorne home, she there continually remayned, hauyng two daughters: of the whiche the eldest hyght Soemis, and the yunger was named Pammea. The eldrie had a Sonne called Bassianus, and the yunger had an other named Alexianus. Wothe these yonge me, were brought vp vnder their yeres olde, and Alexianus. x. Thei were priestes of the Sonne, whiche thenhabitauntes of that countrey, vnde the chiefly worship naming it in the Phenicien tonge Helcogabalus. Unto hym haue thei dedicated, a very  
great

## The fift booke.

Fol. ix.

great Temple, decked, and adorned, with abundance of Golde, Syluer, and preciouse stones. And not onely thenhabtantes them selues, do worshyppe it, but all the noble menne also of the nexte nacions, and the Barbarous Bynges, voo euerye yeare offer vnto it, sumptuouse, and preciouse gyftes. There is no ymage made after the Romayne, and Grecien facion, lyke vnto thys God. For it is a myghtye stone from the botom sharpened, more, and more vnto the toppe, much lyke a Pynapple. The colour of the stone is blacke, whyche they reporte to be fallen out of heauen. In the same stone, are sene very many formes, and colours, which they affirme, to be the shape of the Sonne, made by no mans hande. Unto this ymage was Bassianus sacred priest. And because he was thelder, hym selfe moste commonlye executed the office, apparelled gorgeously after the Barbarous maner. For he ware a cote wounen with gold, hauing longe sleues, and retchyng downe to hys heeles. Hys legges wer couered from the hames to the toes, with lyke vesture of golde, and purple. And he ware on hys head, a garland of freshe floures, shining with colours. He was then besydes in the floure of hys youth, and the beautifullest of all yonge men, at that tyme lyuyng. And because hys beautye, wþt the proportion of his bodye, the floure of hys age, and his gorgious decked apparel, wer so agreeable togethers, men compared him, vnto the goodly Images of Dionys. Nowe whyles thys Bassianus was celebrating the sacrifice, and daunlyng after the Barbarous maner, men dyd attentively luke vpō him: but chiefly the Romayne Souldiours (either for that they knew hit to be of the Imperiall blonde, or elles, because hys florishyng beautye, allureth euerye man, to caste hys eyes towardes hym) for the Romayne hoste laye then nyghe that Cypte: beynge sente thither, for the defence of Phenicia, and shortly after departed from thence, as we shall hereafter declare. As they resorted to the Churche daylye, throughte the pretence of religion, they gladlye behelde the yonge man. Amonges them

K. III. were

## The historie of Herodian

Bassia:  
nus na-  
med An-  
tonine &  
called bi-  
to them-  
pire.

certayne banyshed Romaynes, familier wth Mœsa.  
Whome she perceyvng, to wonder at the beautie  
of thys Striplinge, reported vnto thē, that he was the  
Sonne of Antonine, although he were supposed ano-  
thers: doubtfull it is, whether she spake the truth, or  
not. For she said, þ whiles she abode in thimperial pa-  
laice, wth her suster, Antonine had to do with her. ii.  
doughters, being then yong & faire. This being once  
told vnto them, & by them told againe vnto the residus  
of their felowes, was furthwith published throughout  
out thole Campe. It was besides reported, that Mœsa  
had whole heapes of money, which he would gladlye  
distrubute amonges the Souldiors, if thei wold restore  
thempire, vnto her issue. They promised her therfore,  
(yf she would come priuely by night into the Campe)  
to opē the gate, & receaue her wth her folkes in. For the  
which promise, the olde woman denied them nothyng  
that they dyd demaunde: being contente, rather to at-  
tempt, or take in hād any daūger, thē to lede a priuat,  
& abiect life. Therfore she departed secretly by night  
out of þ citie, wth her doughters & neuerwes, & was con-  
veyed, by the afore named fugitivis, into the Campe.  
And beinge into the same wythout interruption re-  
ceaved, furthewyth all the Souldours called the  
yong man Antoinye, apparelled hym wyth purple,  
and kepte hym wth a sure garde, amonges them for  
a whyle. Then they broughte all the vitavls, and ne-  
cessaryes, that they coulde gette, in the nerte vpilages,  
and fyeldes, wyth theyz wyues, and children, into the  
Campe. And so fortifyed them selues wthin the same,  
that yf nedē required, they myght abyde the siege.  
When these thinges were reported vnto Macrinus,  
then soiornyng at Antioche, and a rumour was spred  
throughout the host, that Antoinynes son was fōnde,  
& that the suster of Julia, gaue money vnto the Soul-  
diors, when all that was spoken of, or thoughte to be  
possible, was holden for trew, every man beganne to  
doubt, and reuolt from Macrinus: syzed partly ther-  
vnto, through the hate thei bare vnto him, & partelye  
through the pitie, whiche they had of the memoze of  
Antoinyne

## The fift booke.

Fol. lxi,

Antonsne: but especially encensed, wth desire, & hope, of  
monet. So þ furthw many fled vnto þ new Antonine.  
But Macrinus, cōtēpninge thole matter as childish,  
& blsing his accustomed alacritie of minde, abode him  
self at home, & sent one of his capytains furth, wth as  
great a power, as seamed sufficient, for the subduing  
of the rebelles. But when Julianus (for that was the Julia-  
Capitains name) came thither, & began to lay siege to nus.  
the walles, the Souldours þ were wthin, shewd fro  
their Towers, & other high places, the yong man: cri-  
yng wth loude voices, that he was þ Son of Antoni-  
ne, & listing vp great bagges of moncy, which are the  
only baste of treason. And they crediting, that he was  
Antonines son in deade, & because they wolde haue ic  
so apeare, esteming also his face, & liniamentes of bo-  
dye to be verye lyke, strake of Julianus head, and sent  
it vnto Macrinus. That eanded, the gates of the for-  
tresse were opened, and them selfes received in. Thus  
was theyz power augmented, able, not onely to abide  
a siege, and repulse an assaulte, but also, to pytche a  
fielde, a great number of fugitives, dayly resortyng  
vnto them. When Macrinus heard therof, he incon-  
tinently marched forwardes wth thole armie, to as-  
saulte the fortresse. And Antonine led his power furth  
against him, for that his Souldours woulde not ta-  
rie the siege, beyng able ynochough to syght in playne  
battayle. Then bothe the armyes encountred toge-  
thers, in the confynes of Phenicia, and Syria.  
On the one side, Antonines Souldours fought more A conflic.  
courageously, through feare of greuous punishment, if  
thei were vanquished. On the other side, charme of Ma-  
crinus, fought faintly, amonges whō many revolted  
vnto Antonine. He whiche when Macrinus percea-  
ued, fearinge, lest beinge forslakinge of his all men, he  
should be taken prisoner, & suffer great reproche, whi-  
les his souldiors fought, he threw away his Cote ar-  
mour, & other imperial ornamēts, & being accōpanied  
with a few of his meanest souldiors, he fled awai. And  
having shauen his beard, least he should be knewe, &  
clad in a simple garnēt, & his head, & face, cōtinuallye  
covered

## The historie of Herodian

couered, he trauayled both night & day, preuenting to  
celerite, the fame of his fortune. For as yet hys men  
soughte to great prowes, as though Macrinus possessed  
all the pire. He so escaped, as we before haue declared.  
In the meane whyle, the Souldyours on eyther side  
sought valiauntlye. And of Macrinus syde, the men  
at armes of hys garde, named Pretorians, suffayned  
alone the whole burnte. For they were talle, & mighty  
men, and chosen, and approued warriours. The reste  
of the multitude, toke Antonymes parte. But when  
they, whiche a great whyle had soughten for Macri-  
nus, coulde neyther see Macrinus hym selfe, nor the  
Imperiall Diademe, and ornamente, beyng igno-  
rante where he was become, whether he were slaine  
or elles fledde, they wylste not what counsayle to  
take. And althoughe they purposed no longer to figh-  
for hym, whyche appeared, or coulde be founde no-  
where, yet feared they, to yeld them selues, vnto theyz  
enemyes power, as recreant, and vanquished Sub-  
iectes. Then Antonyme, knowyng by the Captives,  
that Macrinus was fledde, sent incontinently, to ad-  
vertise them, that they in bayne foughte for a timo-  
rous and fugitiue Coward; promysynge them on his  
othe, that he woulde forgyue, and forget, all that was  
by them done, and vse theym from thenceforth, for  
the garde of hys personne. The which, they all credi-  
tyng, escaaled furthwith from further fyghtynge.

Then Antonyme without delaye, sent certayne after  
Macrinus, who was longe before escaped. And be-  
yng founde in Chalcedon a Cytre of Bythinia,  
verye sore lycke, and worne through hys contyn-  
nuall trauayll, and hydden in a house of the Subur-  
bes, had hys head there smytten of. It is thoughtee,  
that he mynded to go to Rome, affyenge hym selfe in  
the benevolence of the people. But in saylynge to-  
wardes Europe, in the narowe Sea of Propontis,  
wygh vnto Bizantium, a contrarious wynde draue  
hym backe, as it were of purpose, towardes the place,  
where he shouldynpys he hys lyfe. Thus happened it,  
that Macrinus escaped not, by sleyng awaye, the  
bandes

The pze  
corian  
men of  
armes.

Chalcedō

The death  
of Macri-  
nus.

Propon-  
tis.

Bizanti-  
um.

## The fyfte boke

Fol. lxii.

bandes of hys enemies: receauing a bylathous death,  
and entending to late to goo to Rome, when he shold  
in the beginning haue done the same, and having at  
this his ende, bathe his counsell, and fortune, cleare  
against him. After this sorte, was Macrinus slayne,  
wyth hys Sonne Diadumenus, whome a lytle be-  
fore, he had assooyated vnto him, in the pize. Now af-  
ter thole army had pronounced Anthomine for Empe-  
rour, when him selfe had taken vpon hym the chiefe  
gouvernaunce of thempye, and all the oriental assay-  
res were sette in order, as every one most needed, by  
the discretion of his Graundmoother, and other his  
frendes, (for that hym selfe was verye yonge of age,  
and vaskilfull in matters of greate importaunce) so-  
journing there but a shorte space, he caused hys re-  
mouing to be proclaymed, accordyng to the wyl of  
Dosa, which chiefly coueted, and made hast, towar-  
des Thimperpall Pallacie of Rome, wherewith, he  
so longe before hadde bene acquaynted. When the  
Senate, and people of Rome, harde of thiese thinges,  
every man began to be sorowfull, with the tidinges.  
But thei muckle of force, and necessetye, then alow it,  
seyng he was chosen, by the men of war. And accu-  
selyng within them selues, the negligent myndes, and  
sensuall maners, of Macrinus, thei imputed thole de-  
faute of his ouerthrowe, vnto hys owne slouthe, and  
to none other man, as causer therest. Anthomine be-  
inge departed out of Siria, wintred his armes at Ni-  
colome, the season of the yeare so constraining him. dia.  
Then he began to ware insolent aboue measure, ce-  
lebatynge dailye the honour of his Countrey God, lencye of  
with superfluous, and vndecent pompe, & daunses. Antony-  
Hym selfe was cladde in wanton, and luxuriose ap- ne.,  
pare, wouen wyth Purple, and Golde, decked with  
Duches, and Braceletes, Chaynes, and Kynges of  
Golde, & ware a Crowne like vnto a Chaplet, ado-  
ned with Golde, and preciouse stones. The forme of  
hys habyte, was, as it were, a meane, betwene the  
Phenicien, and Median Apparayle. He defayned the  
Romaine garmentes, because thei were made of volle,  
S.l. lxx

## The historie of Herodian

the whiche was, as he said, vyle, & of no estimaciō. Neither wold he any webbe, but suche as were of Sirian silke, accustomē to cō abrode, w̄ y lown of fleutes, & Tabors, as though he shuld celebrate, y feast of Bacchus. Whē Mocla beheld these his dossolute maners, he begā w̄ hūblepeticiō to perswade him, to were y Rōmēnate house, in y straige & Barbarouse vesture, he shoud offēde the eyes of the beholders. Which being unaccustomed vnto suche wātonnes, ceputed it moze seamly for Wome, then mē. But he, cōtempning the olde womans wordes, entending to trust no mā, (for he retained none about his person, but suche as were agreeable vnto his owne sensualitye) and fullye mynding, to vse the same apparaile continually, determined being absent, to make a profe, with what countenance, & after what sorte, the Senate, and people of Rome, would accepte his usage. Wherefore, he sente to Rome, his owne picture painted lyuely in a table, with the lym amentes, & facyon of apparell, wherein he was wōt to sacrifice, vnto his God. And theri the figure of his God also, vnto whō he was sacred: commanding them y caried it, to set it in y middes of the Senate house, in some high place, over y head of vice-roy: y when y Senatours were assembled, thei shuld offre encense & wyne. He comāudē also, y all y Romayne Magistrates, whiche vled to execute publique sacrifices shuld before all their Goddes, whō thei valed to sacrifice vnto, name, & honoz, his God Yeleoga balus. Wherby it happened, that when he entred in to the Cittie, y Romaynes beheld no newe, or straige syghte, for that thei daily before had seen his picture. Thē, after he had distributed amōges y people bouēfull giftes, as al new Emperours are accustomed, he set furth many sūptuouse shewes, & plates. And builded a large, and gorgeouse Tēple, soz his God, & vnde the same, many auilters: vpon the whiche, euery morning, he sacrificed a. C. Bulles, & a greate number of spicces. And heaping vpon the auilters, all kindes of odiferous spicces, he vled to poure down, many Cuppes, ful of y best olde wines, y could be gotē. So y ther

## The fyfte boke

gan dolys, shdy streames of wine, misled w̄ bloud. About y auilters, he caused many to daule, w̄ y sowns of diuersē inscumes, amōges whō lūdyp Phenisē, wome plaid vpō Ciballes, & Tibrelles. Al y Senators, & knigthes behelde the, stādig in a rōud circle, like unto a Theatre Thinwardes of beastes, & swete sinellig perfumes, wer the caried vpō mēs heads, in dishes of Gold: not by any base or priuate perso, but by p̄cipal Magistrates, Capitanes of y war, & Rulers of y Provinces: whō wer al clad in lōg garmētes, woue through out w̄ purple, & ware linne lockes vpō their leate, as y Prophētes accustomed to do in thōse regiōs. And he thought, y he did very honorably entreatē those: whō he made partakers of this solēpnity. But albeit, he celebrated daily w̄ daules, & melody, those sacrifices, yet did he put to death, many noble, & rich mē: being accusēd vnto him, y thei wer nothig pleased, w̄ thōse vaine Ceremonies, and his voluptuous sensuality, but vled dayly to speake v̄l of it. He toke to wife, a noble wōmā of Rome, whō he named Augusta. But shortlye after forsoke her, and deprivēg her, of all Imperial honour, he comāudē her, to lede a priuate, and symple lyfe. Then sayning him selfe to be rauished w̄ loue, (that he might seeme to do som māli act) he maried y forcs, a veffal virgin, whō y lawes had bōud to be continualy chaske. And cōforted w̄ letters, y Senate, beyngh so rowful for y facinoouse act) sayig, y it was an humā. Virgyns me syn, because he was rauished w̄ her loue. He affirme, y it was decēt for a priest, to Marri a Nunne. For so shuld y mariage be more fortunate. Neuerthelesse, shortlye after, he rejected her also, & maried y third wife which was thought to be descended of y bloode of Chmod. Neither did he only delude mortall matrimon, but he sought also a wife for his god. For he caused to be brought into his Chāber, y image of Pallas, whō y Romans do gretely worship: being secretly hidde, image of & permitted to be sene of no mā. The same goddesse, I Pallas, say, being frō y time, it was brought fōrth of Troy, vnto that day vntouched (saing when y Tēple was burned) did he remoue out of her Seate, & typoned her in mariage vnto his God, w̄in thimper all Pallaciz. D. y.

## The historie of Herodian

But soone after, he altered that mynde, sayenge, that it was vnpleasaunt for his God, to haue a warlyke, & armed wyfe. And therefore he comaundered the ymage of Urania, to be brought vnto hym. The whiche was chyly worshipped of þ Carthaginenses, & al Africque supposed to be erected by Vido the Phenicia, when he bulded Carthage, wth the cōpace of an ore hide. This Goddess, the Africans name Uzania. And the Pheniciens cal her Astroarchen, affirming her to be the Sonne. Wherefore, he said, that the Matrige of the Sonne & the Moone was agreeable. Her Image therfore, he caused to be broughte fourthe, and all the Golde, and Siluer, which was in her Temple, he comaundered to be giuen to his God for a dower. And after it was brought, and set vp by the Image of Heles gabalus, he comaundered feastfull daisies, wþt banker-king, and solemnitie, to be celebrated openly, & pryz-uely, throughoute thole Cytie, and Italy, for the Ma-riage of the Goddes. He bulded also in the Subur-bes, a mighty, & sumptuousse Temple: into þ whiche, in chende of Sommer, he caried his God. Thynking that he muche pleased the people, with his Enterlu-des & Comedies, with his open bākets, & nyght wat-ches. He conueied his God, as I said, out of the City, in to þ Suburbes, in a Chariot adornd w Golde, & pre-ciousse stones, drawne by. vi. goodlye white hōrses, of great height, notably decked wth Golde, and varie-eyt of harnesse. No man rode in that Chariot, but the people ran on every syde of it, gasinge vpon the God. And Anthonine hym selfe rode before the Chariot, w his face backewards towardes the hōrse tayle, & wþt re sole, beholding þ image, continually as he rode, he so fin-ished this his fonde iorney. And least he shoulde fall, or flyde vñwares, in that his vñwyse ridinge, he caused the strectes to be thicke couered wth lāde, & his Gard helde hym on eyther syde, that he might w moze safte sit on his hōrse. The people rā about him w Eorches & Crislettes, strowinge of floures, & Garlades, in his wate. There accompanid besides this Pōpe, þ images of al þ Goddes, & al other preciouse cōnametes which were

Uzania.

Car-thage.  
Astroar-chē.

The me-re  
of Anto-vyne.

## The fiftthe boke.

Fol. lxiiii,

Wer in þ Temples, the tokēs of honoz, & þ beautifullest household stufle of Thempire, w the men at armes, & al the Romayn host. When he had brought these thin- ges into the Temple, layed the same there, and finisched hys sacrifice, he went vp into the hyghe towers, whiche wer of purpose there erected, & out of them, he threwe manye thynges amonges the people. That is to weete, cuppes of Syluer and Golde, garmentes of ryche wōrke, and all sortes of lynnen clothe. He distri-buted amonges them also, all kynde of tame beastes, except Swyne, from the whiche (accordyng to the Phenicien usage) hym selfe abstained. In the catching wherof, many perished: some beyng thrust to deathe in the press, other sone slayne wþt the Souldours weapons. So that the same festiuall Pompe, was turned into a dolorous calamitie of manye men. Hym selfe besydes, was manye tymes scene cartynge, and leappyng. For he woulde not permitte hys owne flagitious exercises to be hydden: goynge often tymes abrode, wþt hys eyes painted, his browes made red, and hys face beyng naturallye beautiful deformed, wþt vndecent colours. The whiche when Mesa perceaved, suspectyng the indignation of the Souldours, and feareynge, that ys oughte but good came vnto hym, her selfe shoulde be constrainyd, to retournis to her private lyfe, she persuaded the foolish, and rash-ponge man, to adopte into the Empire with him hys kynsman, and her newewe, beyng borne of her dou-ghter Hammica. And that she myght the better please hym, she sayde, that he, whiche executed ouþ the offi-cie of a P̄riest, & celebratid the sacrifices of the Goddes, ought to haue some Substitute, which shoulde go-uerne the Empire, out of care, and trouble. Nowe was ther no straunger, nor forreyne person, so meete to be elected therunto, as hys owne kynsman. The same was Alerianus, whiche then was called Alex-ander, by hys fathers name, chaunged into the name of the Macedonien kyng. For the same kyng, being of great renowme, dyd Anthonine the Sonne of Seu-rus, chiefelye eruerence. Whiche Anthonine, theyz

S. iii.

Graundz

## The Historie of Herodian.

**Graundemother** persuaded the Souldyours, to be the Father of them both: blasynge therby, the Fornication of her daughters, that she might therby cause the Souldyours the better to loue them. Therfore Alexander was declared Emperoure, and created Confull wyth Antonyne: the Senate determining wyth skorne, and laughter, that whyche Antonyne required. That is to saye, hym selfe, beyng but fourtene yeares olde, to be the Father, and Alexander, whyche was vneth entred the twelue yere of hys age, to be the Sonne. After Alexander was pronounced Emperoure, Antonyne endeououred to corrupte hym, wyth hys sensuall maners, that in syngynge, and daunsynge, beyng partaker of hys Priesthode, he shoulde weare the same apparell, and vse the same fassions with hym. But Mammea the Woother of Alexander, preserued hym from all dishonestye, and fyllyng, byngynge hym vp priuely vnder diuers learned men, in litterature, modestie, and good maners: accusynge hym vnto wraestynge, and other decent exercisles, and instructynge hym, in the Greeke, and Latyn tongue. Therat Antonyne greatly grudged, repenteinge him of his adoption, and participatiyon of the Empyre. And therfore, he expelled out of his Palacie, all those Instructours, of whome some the excellentest, he put to death, and thorther he afflicted wtch erile, allegyng agaynst them, foolishe, and baine causes, that they corrup ted hys Sonne, not suffering hym to vse lybertye, and daunsynge, but instructinge hym, in modest, and comeyle exercises. And he fell into suche extreme folye, that he distributed the chiesest dignityes, in the common wealth, amonges players of Commodies, and Enterludes. For he made Lieutenant generall of the Armiye, a certayne daunser, whiche in hys youth, had bene a common Player vpon Scattoulds. Another of the same ravel, he appoynted gouernour of the youth, and another, chiese of the order of knyghthode. Unto Carters, Ruffians, and disordred Brotheis, he commyted the chiese charge of the Empyre. And vnto hys Bonde men and

## The fiftie boke.

Fol. lxy.

and Lybertynes, as euerye of them exceeded another in abomination, he clynered the rule of the p[ro]vinces. Thereby, all thynges, whyche before were honest, were tourned into byle beastlynesse: whyche caused that all men, and chiesely the Romayne Souldyours, detested hym, as one whych fashyoned hys countenaunce, moxe wantonlye, then became anye honeste woman. For he was decked wyth chaynes, and ouches of golde, and apparelled wyth lasciuious clothyng, vncomlye for a man, and daunsed daylye in the syght of them all. Therfore they bare moxe benevolent myndes vnto Alexander, and had better confidenc in that Childe, for that he was modestly brought vp. And they all sauied hym, from y treason, and myschiese of Antonyne. Neyther woulde hys Woother Mammea, suffer hym to touche any meate, or drynke, that was sent from the other. The chylde also vsed not any of the Imperiall, or common Cookes, and Pasteles, but such as hys Woother had chosen for hym, whyche were both trusty and honest. She gaue hym money also to distribuite priuely amonges the Souldyours, whyche chiesely couete the same, that he myghte by it, as by a sure lynked Chayne, drawe them vnto hym.

When Antonyne perceaued that, he inuented all the mischiefe he coulde agaynst Alexander, and hys Woother. Neuerthelesse, they common Graundmother Moesa aboyded all suche crueltye. For she was a woman of a stoute courage, and had also of longe tymis soiourned in the Imperiall Palacie, wyth her Suster Heuerus wifse, whereby she was throughlye skylfull of that whiche Antonyne intended: who was naturallye full of talke, and wythoutte discretion, accustomed to blase abiode, what soever he mynded, or woulde haue done. And then seynge hys enterprise not to vroceade, as he wylshed, he determined to deprive the Chylde all of Imperial honours. And therefor comauanded that he shoulde be no longer saluted as Emperoure, neyther woulde he suffer hym to go abyde amonges the people.

Buc

## The Historie of Herodian.

But the Souldours desyred hym wonderfullye, disdaynyng that the Empire shold be taken from him. Then Anthonine caused a rumoure to be blowen abroad, that Alexander was deade, to the entente he myght thereby perceave, after what sorte, the Souldours woulde take the same. But they seynge the chylde not appeare abrode, and hauynghe theri hertes persed wyth thos sorowefull tidynges, wared wonderfull wrothe, withelde from Antonine hys accustomed garde, and hauynghe shutte the gates of theyr Campe, sayde, they woulde perforce see Alexander, within theyr Temple. Antonlyne beyng thereby smitten wyth feare, rode unto the Campe in the Imperiall Chariot, beyng adorned wyth precious stones, wherin also late Alexander. Whome the Souldours, (after they were bothe entred into the Campe, and broughte into the Temple therof) saluted aboue measure folowyng hym wyth ioyfull acclamations, and utterlye as I myghte saye, contempnyng Antonlyne. He beyng therwyth meruaylously chaufed, after he had liven one nyght within the Temple, and noted the Souldours, whyche had shouted vnto Alexander, commaunded them all to be put to deathe, as authoress of sedicion, and rebellion. They thereat disdaynyng, and abhorryng before tyme Antonlyne, wyshynge also to dispach out of life, that monstrous Emperour and to helpe theyr Companions, and perceauyng the tyme to be apte for the deede, furthwyth lewe Antonlyne hym selfe, and hys Moother Soemis, who was by chaunce at that tyme ther present, and with them, all theyr Seruantes, and ministers of vice, that came wyth them into the Campe. Then they delyuered hir to the common people, the boodes of Antonlyne, and Soemis, to be drawen wyth shame, throughoute the stretes of the Citty. The people dyd so, and then threw them into the common syntes, that they myght be carryed into Tyber. And tho Souldours, hauyng saluted Alexander for Emperour, broughte hym into Ehemperiall palacie, beyng verye vonge, and as yet obeitit vnto the comandementes of his grandmother.

Finis.

Antonlyne & hys  
Moother  
Sayne.

## C The Argumente of the

Sixte Booke of Herodian.

Fol. lxi.

In the syxe Booke, the Author treateth of the bountie and clemencie, of Alexander, & the auarice, of his Moother Hammira. Of the warre, made by Accareres Kyng of Persia, and the occasyon therof. Against whome Alexander appayled a great army, and deuided it into thre partes. Then ensuen, the causes wherefore, Alexander loste the loue of the Souldours. Who in the beginning of the warre, against the Germanes, chale Maximinus Emperour, whi che procured Alexander, with his Moother, and all hys frendes to be slayne.

## C The syxe booke of the Hystorie of Herodian.



It is manifestly, in the former booke, declared, what ende of lyfe, had Anthonine theldre. After whome, Alexander alone possessed the name, and regimenter, of Ehemperie. But thadmission of all assayres, and gouernaunce of the weale publique, appertained to the women: who en Alexander  
deuored to reduce all thin-  
ges, to their pristinai seuenlynnes, and modesty. For the Em  
pyre, rui  
fyrt of all, thei elected. xvi. of the ordre of Senatores, led by wo  
erelling in grauity of maners, and cotinencie of life,  
to be assistante & of preuy vns. Coulail Théperox, is  
vnto the consent of whiche Counsaylours, there was  
nothing, eyther in word, or writing, collymed. Where  
by this forme of p'scipalitey became gracieful vnto hym  
L. i. at

## The Historie of Herodian

at Armes, and Senate of Rome, for that it was chau-  
ged, from mosse pestiferous Tiranny, unto the ouer-  
lyght, and rule of noble men. Then were the ymages  
of the Goddes, whiche Anthonine in hys lyfe tymc,  
had remoued oute of theyz Seates, restored agayne  
into theyz owne Temples, and places. Then were all  
those, whiche Anthonine had rashelye, for their cupli-  
maners, aduaunced unto highe dignities, deposed, &  
set to their accustomed lyfe, and occupacion. Then  
all Ciuyple, and foroyne matters of iudgemente, were  
apoynted to thordzing of wylle, and profoude learned  
men, in the lawes: And all warlyke assayres, comis-  
ted to the rule, of valiaunte Capitaines, and experte  
men of warre. When Thempyre had bene after thy-  
sore a greate space governed, Moesa whiche was ve-  
ry aged, ended her life. Unto whome, all imperial ho-  
nours were appoynted, and, as the Romayne blage-  
is, she was canonized wþth immortallite. After  
her death, Mammea, perceauing her selfe to be leaste  
alone unto her Sonne, endeououred to contine we the  
same forme of gouernement, which was begon. And  
sayinge that the yonge man, enjoyed nowe alone thole  
dominion, he feared leste his yonge age, shoulde wa-  
lue in extreme liberty, and thereby fall into some of  
his kinsinans vices. Wherefor she alwayted wel his  
person, and all places of the Coozte: not sufferig him  
to be approched unto, of any yonge man, whose lyfe,  
and maners, were suspected, least that his good dys-  
posid, wold be corrupted, through Paralytes, and  
flatterers, whiche wold prouoke his minde, & appeti-  
te, then dorishing, into Wåton & naughty affections.  
She perswaded him, to exercycle hys body, in decente  
recreacions, the better parte of the daye, and that be-  
yng often, leste there shold be anye space leste, for yll  
thoughtes, whyles he myghte be better occupied, in  
apoynting thinges necessary to be done. There was  
naturallly besides in Alerander a geele, and mcke dis-  
position, bent unto affablytie. The whiche thyng, his  
age folowing, made apparaunte. For .xiiii. yeares,  
he gouerned Thempyre, withoute effusion of bloode,  
not as muche as one man, in that time, throughte his

## The syxte booke.

Fol. Ixvii.

procurement, beyng put to death. And although ma-  
ny, through greuouse offences, iustly deserued death,  
yet dyd he euermore absteyne from the execution of  
them. The whiche thing, a man shall not easely finde,  
in any Emperour, especially in those whiche succea-  
ded Marcus. No man can remember, that (whyles he  
reigned,) any was without iudgement put to deathe.  
He accustomed to reprehende his Moother, & blame  
her greatly, for that she was somewhat coueytouse of  
money, and seemed ouer gready in heaping of Treas-  
ures. For taking vpon her, that she gathered money  
togytthers, to encryche Alerander withall, & he myght  
therby, more abundantlye bestowe gyftes vpon the  
Souldours, she syld her owne Costers, wþth the  
same. The whiche her couetyse, blemysched greatly  
Themperours honour, that mangre hys mynde, the  
couetouse woman, shoulde catche, and pyll, by couine,  
and fraude, the enheritaunce of many me. She gaue  
to her Sonne in Marriage, a Mayden descended of no-  
ble blode, whome notwithstanding that her husbad  
entyerlye loued her) her selfe shortlye after expelled  
Thimperiall pallacie, wþth greate obloquy, & shame.  
And coueyting her selfe to be onely named Augusta,  
she enuyed for that cause the mayden, and became so  
outragiousle agaynst her, that the maydens father,  
(albeit he were in greate authorite with Alerander)  
being impacient of the injury, done vnto his dough-  
ter, and hym, by Mammea, fledde into the Campe for  
his owne safegarde, saying, although he were muche  
bounde unto Alerander, for hys manifolde benefices,  
yet he maste of force, accuse Mammea, for the greate  
reprouche she had done vnto him. But she being ther w-  
chaufed, comaided him to be slaine, & y yōge woman  
his daughter, being thrusst out of h imperiall Pallacie,  
she exiled into Aphrique. Neuertheles this was done  
against y will of Alerader. For his Moother ruled hym  
aboue reaso, & had hi alway obeyed vnto her comande-  
mentes: so y this one thing may be reprooved in Alera-  
der, & he vled more humilitie, & reverence, towardes obedient  
his Moother, then becam him, in obeyeng, & accōplys-  
unto hys kyng her comandaunce, against hys owne wyl. Moother

L. g.

## The Historie of Herodian

Now whē he had after this sorte, by the space of thir-  
tene yeres, raigned, the which tyme, he alone enjoyed  
the Empyre, in tranquillity, without disturbance,  
or complainte, of any person, Sodeinly loo, ther came  
letters out of Siria, & Mesopotamia, wherby he was  
certified, that Artareres King of Persia had ouerco-

Siria.  
Mesopotamia.  
Artax-  
erxes.

men the Parthianes & Artabanus theyr king, which  
firste surnamed hi self great, & ware twoe Crownes,  
and not onely bereft him thoriētal dominion, but al-  
so his lyfe, subdued the Barbarous people his neigh-

bours, and made them his tributaries. That he helde  
not him selfe within the Riuier of Tigris, but had re-

Tygris.  
Asia.  
Europe.  
The Aegi-  
an Sea.

Propōtis  
Cyrus.  
Medes.  
Ionia.  
Caria.

gid all the Scite of Lande called Asia, situate ouer a-

gainst Europe, whiche was enironed w the Aegia-

Sea, & the straites of P̄sponitis, as the auncient pos-

sition of the Persians. Because that frō the tyme of

Cirus, who first of all translated the kingdome from

the Medes, to the Persians, vntil the raigne of Dari-

us their last Kyng, (whom Alexander deprived of his

dominion) all thorientall costes, as far as Ionia, and

Caria, were gouerned by the Persian Rulers, & Ca-

pitanes. Wherefore, he affirmed, þ it was his duty, to

see vnto the restauracio of þ aunciet & whole Empire

vnto the Persias again. Whē Alexander heard herof,

beig greatly disquieted vnto those sodeine tidiges of bat-

tayle, (þo he had from his infancie ben tradid in qui-

et tranquillity, & norisched w the Cittie pleasures) and

having first cōsulted w his frendes, & Counsaylours,

he cōcluded, to seide Ambassadours into thoriēt, with

his letters, which he supposed wold represse the Bar-

hariens hope, and pacify their tumultuous inuasions.

The letters were of this sorte directed.

That it behoued Artareres, to holde him selfe con-

tent w his owne Boundes, and Limites of dominio.

Not to sturre, or cause anye more dysencion, ney-

ther beyng puffed wyth bayne confydence, and rashe

. That

## The fiftē booke.

Fol. lxxviii,

That euerye man, ought to quiet hym selfe wyth hys  
owne substaunce, and that he shoulde not have suche  
successe in hys syghte, agaynst the Romaynes, as he  
had obtayned agaynst hys neyghbours. He dyd putte  
hym in remembrance besydes, of the victories, whi-  
che Augustus, Traianus, Lucius, and Seuerus, had  
gotten agaynst them. Wyth these letters, Alexander  
Inposed to reduce the Barbarous kyngē vnto peace,  
and concorde, throughe feare of the menaces in  
them contayned. But he vitterlye contempnyng the  
same, determined (all talke set a parte) to trye the mat-  
ter, wyth weapon, and syghte. And then wyth more  
crueltye, foraged, and spoyled, the whole countrey of  
Mesopotamia, and carayd awaye the Inhabitauntes  
as a bootye, and assualted all suche Fortresses of the  
Romaynes, as were buylded vpon the Riuage, to de-  
fende the boundes of the Romayne Empire.

And being a man naturally glorious, & haulty of stro-  
macke, he thoughte to subdew the whole worlde, ensla-  
med therevnto wyth the prosperous successe of all hys  
affayres, euer, without looking for, obtayned. Neþher  
were the thynges of smale importaunce, whych hym  
deled hys mynde, to the coueteynge of a greater Real-  
me, then hys owne: takyng syrte vpon hym, to in-  
uade the Parthians, wyth warre, and to recover the  
Parthian kyngdome.

For many yeres, after the death of Darius, from  
whome, Alexander the Macedonian, bereft hys kyng-  
dome, the Macedonians them selues, and those which Alexan-  
der succeeded Alexander, gouerned þ regiōs of the Orient,  
and Asia, distributed in sundry parces amongs them.

But when the Macedonian power was greatlye  
wozne, through sundrye batayleys, growen by dissen-

sion amonges them selues, Arsaces the Parthian, is  
cōted by Histories, to be the syrte Persuader of Arsaces.

the Parthians, to revolte from the Macedonians.

And he, by the conseute of the Parthians, and other  
Barbarous people hys neyghbours, wearynge on

hys head the Diademe, obtayned the kyngdome, and  
keele the same vnto hys posterite, euen vnto the time

L.iii.

of

### The historie of Herodian

of the kyng Artabanus, whome Artareres hausing slayne, restored (as it is sayde) the kyngdome vnto the Persians, and broughte in subiection, the mygh Barbarous nacions, he dyd nowe prouoke, the Romayne power to armes.

Whan relational was made hereof to Alexander at Rome, he determined no longer to haue the insolencie of the Barbarous kyng, especiallye leving hys Liuetenantes, and Captaines called hym chyfper. Finallye, wyth greate grudgynge, and sore aggrauement, hys wyl, he prepared hys exection into the battayle. And therore, generall musters were made throughout Italye, and the Provinces, of all suche as seamed aperte, eyther in stature of boore, or strengthes of yeares. In the same musters, were many viuities, and tumultes, amonges the Romayne subiectes, reasonyng, what power myghte be equal, vnto so great a multitude of Barbarous people. And Alexander commaunded all the Pretorian Souldours, and other men at armes, whyche were at Rome, to repayre into the fieldes: where hym selfe beinge ascended into the Tribunal seate, spake these wordes vnto theym.

I woulde wylshe (my felowes in armes) to make suche an oration vnto you, as shold (according to the accustomed wyl) vnto me the speaker, get loue, and honour, and vnto you the hearers, brynging ioye, and gladnes. For sayng we haue now many yeres lyued, in peaceable tranquillitie, yf ye shal heare of any new thing lately happned, peradventure ye wylbe a feare of the same, as of a thynge vnluckely chaunsed. Neuertheles, it becommeth valiaunt & moderat men, in deede to wyl the best: but yet to suffer, & take in worth, what souer happeneth. For as the thynges we do with pleasure is swete, and delectable, so is that we do with vertue, comendable, & glorious. And as he which first geueth occasion of warre, seameth iniurious, euen so he which withstandeth wronge, is more confident in his coscience, & conceaueth a better hope of his quarell, for that it is ryghteous. Artareres a man

### The sixte booke.

Fol. lxix.

man of Persia, hauyng slayne hys Soueraynne lordes Artabanus, and translated hys kyngdome vnto the Persians, doch nowe enterypse, in contempnyng the Romayne Matessie, to pronoke vs to battayle: inuadinge at thys present, and wassynge our provinces. I endeououred at the fyfte to reduce hym by gentle letters from hys unsacieble gredines, and exhorted hym, not to couepte that was not his owne. But he, being puffed vp with Barbarous insolencie, wyl not holde hym selfe within hys owne boundes, but chalengeth vs vnto Battayle. Let vs not therfore triste in the thyng, or deferre the matter. But you whiche are here present, of the auncient sorte of Souldours, cause hym to knowe the manysoldie victories, whiche you haue obteined, vnder the gouernment, and leading of Seuerus, and my fader Antonine. And you whiche are yong men, leke and coueyte (I say) this praise, and glorie: whereby all men maye perceave, that you knowe, not onely, howe to lyue in peace quietlye, and obserue it reverentlie, but also when nede requireth, to fyght valiauntly. Touchyng the Barbarous people, as it is theyr usage, to pursue vehementlye, all suche as at the fyfth flee, and recule, euen so doo them selues tourne theyr backes, vnto thos whiche manfully persist in the fyghe. For they loke not for anye victorie in fyghtyng a playne Battayle, but blyngg Inuasions, and Rodes, accompte them selues Conquerours, of all they can gette by stelth and robberye. But we, on the contrarye parts, haue all thynges decked meete for the warres, wherewyth we haue learned to ouerthrowe, and vanquyshe them.

Whan Alexander hadde spoken these wordes, the men of armes receaved hym ioyfullye shouting, and shewynge theym selues ready, to goe wyth good wylles into the warre. Then he distributed a greate summe of money amonges theym, and commaunded them, to prepare them selues to the tourney. Anone after, he made the lyke Oration in the Senate house, and appoynted the daye of hys departure.

The

## The historie of Herodian

The de-  
parture  
of Alex-  
ander fro  
Rome.

The whiche beyng come, after he had (accordinge to the auncient vsage) fynished hys sacrfice, he departed the Senate, and all the Romaine people conveyng hym out of Rome: vpon the which he loked backe wth wepyng eyes. Neþher was there anye of the common people, whiche watered not hys plantes, in the beholdinge of hys departure. For all the multitude was desirous of hym, because he was broughte vp amonges them, and had gouerned thempire, þerþe manye yeares, wth muche modellyste.

When he was departed, he vsed dilygent spedē in his tourney, visited the Illirian people, & men of war, increased hys power euery where, & wet vnto Antioche. In that Citie, he prepared all suche necessaries, as were expedient for the warres. And caused hys Soulđours to exercise them selues in seates of armes. Hym selfe prouyded wth muche dilygence, weapons and harnessel for the same.

It semed then good vnto hym, to prone by another Ambassade, whether the Persian Kyng, woulde condescende vnto peace, and vnicie. For beyng hym selfe presente, he lytle doubted, eyther to persuade Artaxerres, as he woulde, or at least wyle put hym in feare, wth menaces. But the barbarous kyng, dismissed the Romayne Dratours home agayne, wþout any thyng concluded. And in theyz compayne sent fourty of the goodlyest men of stature, in hys armye: who were gorgioulye apparelled, in ryche Robes adourned wth gold, rode vpon great Coursers, and carayed great Bowes in theyz handes, thynkyng to abashe the Romaynes wth the syghte of theyz valnes, and sumptuous rayment. The effect of theyz Ambassade was this.

The great Kyng Artaxerres, commaunded the Romaynes wþ theyz Emperour, to depart out of Syria, & al that part of Asia, whch is situate oueragainst Europe: & suffer the Persians, to raygne, & haue dominion, as farre as Ionia, and Caria, and all suche landes geaſea, as the Aegean ſea, and Pontus doo enuiron. When these fourtre Ambassadours had declared their message,

## The fyxe boke

Fol. lxx.

message, Alexander commaunded them, to be apprehended, toke from them al their sumptuous apparel, and set them into Phrigia, where he alotted vnto the certayne Villages, and fieldes to tyll, and enhabit, þeyng satylled wth this punyshmente of exyle, from their native Countrey. For he rekened it very cruel, and nothing agreeable to manhood, to put the to death, for therescutynge theyz Maisters commaundemente, not beyng taken in battayle.

When thiese thynges were thus ended, and whiles Alexander was busyed in preeparation of Bridges to passe ouer the Ryuers, and to leade the Romayne Armye into the confynes of the Barbariens, therē revolted, and fledde frō hym, many Egyprian Soulđours, and in Siria also, dyuerse Commocions, beganne to kyndle agaynſte hys gouernement.

But the same were furthewyth appealed, and the Rebelles taken, and put to deathe. Then Alexander sente certayne armyes of Soulđours, into the nigh Regiones, that thereby the invasions of þe Barbarouse people, myghte more easlye be restrayned.

All whiche thynges, beyng thus settē in ordre, and as greate an armye leuyed, as he thoughte, would be equall of power, vnto hys enemys Hoste, he deuyded them, by hys friendes counsayle, into three sun-  
mve of  
marche towardes the North, throughe Armenia, der deu-  
whiche was reputed frendely vnto the Romaynes, ded into  
and to inuade the borders of the Medians. An other three par-  
army he sent towardes the North also, commanding  
them, to passe by thole syeldes of the Barbariens, Arme-  
where Tigris, and Euphrates, are receyued, into nia.  
greate Maryshes, & Pooles, and thereby it is vncer-  
rayne where they ende. The thyrd parte, hym selfe

Medians  
Tigris.  
Euphrates.  
agaynſte the Barbariens. Thynkyng by that mea-  
nes to oppresse them soleynly, wth dyuerſe inuazy-  
ons, when they were unready, and loked for no ſuche  
chaunce. He ſuppoſed, alſo that the Persian power,  
ſhoulde throughe thole dyuerſe encoütres wth the  
Romaynes,

## The historie of Herodian

Romaynes, on euerye syde, be dyspersed abroade, were more faynt, and entre into battayle, wþchoute order. For the Barbariens, vþe not anye mercenarye Souldours, as the Romaynes are accustomed, neyther haue they anpe armie in pþt, ched Campe, where they myghte exercysle them selues, in seates of warres. But the hole multitude of men, yea ofteyn tymes of women also, doe assemble togethers, at the Kynges commaunde mente. The whyche multitude, after the warre syñshed, are dysmyssed home agayne, to theyz pþpuate habytacions, carpente wþth them, liche boote of the battayle, as euerye one of theim, for hys and Horses, iust onely in battayle, ( as the Romaynes are wonte ) but they are even from theyz chylde-hooðe, brought vp togythers, traded wþth hunting, and bearynge alwayes theyz quyuers of arowes wþth them. Thei never lyghte from theyz Horses, whether thei syghte in Battayle, or hunte wylde beastes.

But thys Polycye of Alexander, albeit at the syntre, it seamed, wþthoute controuersye, to be the besse, yet was it fourthewyth, by fortune, made desyntre of good successe. For the armie, that was commaunded to marche by Armenia, ( hauynge wþth greate payne, and diffycultye, ( althoughe the sommer season, caused theyz iorney, to be meatelys tollerable ( passed the sharpe mountaynes, and craggye rockes ) entred into Media, and there burnte thys vilages, and draue away great bootyes, of one thing, and other.

When relacion hereof, was made to the Persyan Kyng, he came to rescue the Countrey, wþth as greate a power, as he coulde leue. But he coulde not drþue away the Romaynes from thence, for that the same craggie Countrey, ministred sure tooing, and easye passage, vnto the Romayne footemen. And

the

## The syxte boke

Fol. lxxi.

the Warbohouse horsmen, throughe the steernes, of the Sharpe rockye Mountaynes, hadde a more vneasly trauayle, and laborouse iorneye. There, was it declared, vnto the Persian Kyng, that an other armie of the Romaynes, was entred, into liche borders of the Parthians, as extended towardes the orient. Wherfore, searvinge leasste the Romaynes, after they hadde Conquered the Parthians, woulde invade Persia also, he lefste as greate a Garson be hynde hym, as seamed sufficente, for the defensioñ of Media, and hym selfe, wþth thole Armye made speeþe hast into thorientall coastes.

The Romayne Armye, marched forwarde verre slowelye, for that no manne resylded theim. Thynkyng, that Alexander wþth the thyde parte of theim, ( wherein were the chyfdest menne of warre ) was alreadye entred, into the myddes of the Barbariens. And therfore they refled them selues: iudgyng, that it was not besse, to make a greate hast, seyng they were nowe in safetys, and knewe the place, wherein they shoulde altogether meete, wþth theyz boote, and Brysoners.

But Alexander deceaued theim. For he neyther came hym selfe, nor broughte anpe Armye for Alexander ward. Doubtfull it is, whither he so slacked, throughe deceipte feare of putynge hys lyfe in hasarde, in defensioñ of his Ar. Chempyre, or whither hys Woother deteyned hym myne. at home, throughe womanly fearefulness, and oþuer muche loue of her Sonne.

For, in deade, she bleuynched, and blunted, all hys noble, and valyannte courage, in persuadynge hym, rather to lende other furth to the warres, then stande hym selfe in battayle. The whyche thyng dyde vterlye betraye the Romayne Armye, that was entered into the Barbarous Regions. For the Persian Kyng dyd meete, and sette vppon theim, vncadye, and lookyng for no

A. y.

liche

## The historie of Herodian

suche chaunce, wylth hys hole power, and enclosynge them, as it were, in a nette, dyd bterlye dyscomfyte, and ouerthrawe, euerye personne of them, besyng fewe in number, & not able to resyste, so great an Hoste of theyz enemyes. Neuerthelesse, at the sytste ther defended stontly, with their Targettes, and weapons, the naked places of theyz bodyes, from the violent shot of arrowes: Accomptyng them selues hapely dealte wylth all, yf wylthoute anye playne battayle, they myghte safely escape, from damage. But when thei had for a lytle space, enclosed them selues wylth theyz Targettes, and were assaultyd lyke vnto a walled Cite, and slayne on every parte, hauynge vnto the ende valyauntly resyssyd, they were murdereed downe ryghte.

The Ro  
mynes  
banquis.  
Hrd,

This was a meruelous calamitie, vnto the Romayns, the lyke whereof, can be in no age remembred, for thei had nowe loste a greate armye, worthy, eyther for Loyalte, or Strengthe, to be compared, vnto anye auncient Hoste, before passed. But the wylched successe of thiese assayres, enhaunsid the myndis of the Persyan Kyng, wylth hope of greater enterpryses.

The Ar  
my war  
ed wroth  
wyth A  
lexander

Wherof when Alexander heard (beynge at that tyme, verye sore sycke, eyther throughe pespuenes of mynde, or els thintemperatnes of the ayre) he toke it verve greususlye, and thole armye, wared wonderfull wrothe, agaynst The mperadure. For thei sayde, that theyz Companions, were betrayde by hym, throughe hys lyenge, & not performenge of promyse. Then Alexander, beynge impaciente of hys dysese, and the heate of the ayre, (thole armye also, vexed wylth syckenes, and especiallye the Ilyrians, (who before accusstomed vnto moyse, & coulde ayre, & then leading moze largelwe) fell throughe syckenes, into danger of deathe), determined to retourne vnto Antioche: whyther he caused hys Souldours also to come, verye fewe in numbre remaynnyng, for that the mooste parte of them, were perysched, throughe the sharpenes of the Wynter, and Mountaynes.

The

## The sixte boke.

Fol. lxxii.

The bandes, whiche were attendaunt vpon hys personne, hym selfe ledde backe vnto Antioche, hauynge loste manye of them also. Therfore, thys matter broughte muche sorowe vnto the armye, and greate dishonour vnto Alexander, Fortune hauynge deceaved hym in all places, and tourned hys entent to none effecte. For a meruaylous numbre of thosse. iii. armes (so perdye, had he deuided them) were destroyed by diuers calamities, as syckenes, battayle, and colde. When Alexander was come vnto Antioche, he recovered health, refreshed wylth the temperat ayre there, and aboundinge of water, after the burnynghe heate of Mesopotamia, refreshed also hys Souldours, & fortynghe theyz sorowe, wylth geuynghe theym money, (whiche he rekened to be the pryncipall meane, to winne theyz heartes) renewed hys armye, and repayred the same wylth freshe Souldours throughout, as though he woulde ones more leade them agaynst the Persians, yf they proceaded to be troublesome, and desyssyd not from their iuris.

But then was it declared vnto hym, that the Persyan Kyng, hadde dysmyssed all hys Souldours home to theyz habytacions. For althoughe the Barbariens, seamed to be the Superiours in Battayle, yet throughe often, and sundrye Battayles, foughte in Media, and Parthia, a great parte of them were slayne, the rest whyche remayned, were eyther empayred wylth dysenses, or elles in Skirmishes soore wounded. Neyther were the Romaynes sowlye overcome, but them selues were many times noylome vnto theyz enemyes: beyng by none other meane vanquished, then for that they were, fewer in numbre, entrapped.

For when almoste lyke numbre, was on bothe sydes slayne, the rest of the Barbariens, not in strenght and prowesse, but onelye in multitude, seamed to be the better. Whereof, this is sufficient prose, that the Barbariens, in. iii. or. iii. yeres after, fell not againe vnto armes. The whyche when Alexander vnderstoode, he made hys abode styli at Antioche. And being

v. iii.

## The Historie of Herodian.

from thence forwarde, more mercye, & liberal, & forges-  
tyng the care of the warres, gaue him selfe to the vng-  
luptuous pleasures of the same Cyrye. But whiles he  
thought, that the Barbartes would frō thence furth,  
remayne quiet, or at the leaste wylc, it woulde be a  
longe tyme, before they coulde assemble againe their  
power, bneasy to bring together, after they were once  
seperated, for that they were rude, and out of order, &  
rather a multitude of rual people, then an armye, ha-  
ving onely as much vitayle, as euerye man byngeth  
for his presēt necessitie, frō his house: vnwilling also,  
to depart frō theyz wiues, children, & habitacions, loo,  
furthwith came messengers & letters vnto him, from  
the Rulers of Illiria, the which troubled hym woder-  
fully, & cast hym into great thought, and perplexitie of  
mynde. For they signified, that the Germaynes had  
passed ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, were entered  
into the boundes of the Romaine Empire, assayled  
the armies, which defended the banckes, & made theyz  
rodes through the Countrey, by the Cities, & Villas-  
ges, with a great power of men. And that therby the  
Illirias, being a nacion borderer, and neighbour vnto  
Italye, stode in great hastarde and daunger, wher-  
fore, it was requisit, that Emperour shoulde be ther  
in hys owne person, and bynging all the power he had  
wyth hym.

These newes, strake marueilous feare, into Alex-  
ander, and doleful sorowe into the Illirian Souldours.  
For they perceaued them selues to be afflicted,  
wyth two miserable calamities, at one instaunte: ha-  
ving fyre & euil successe in the warres, against the Per-  
siās, & after, hearyng that their frenedes were slaine  
at home, by the Germaynes. Wherfore, they greatly  
grudged against Alexander, as yf by hys cowardyse,  
theyz former assayres, had bene betrayed in Thori-  
ent, and that now he protracted his remoue, when as  
the Northerne causes, earnestly called for hym. Now  
Italie: the assayres of the Persians and the Germa-  
nes, beng of vnykē daunger. For those which inha-

## The sixte boke.

Fol. lxxiii.

bite the Orient, are sequestred wyth great distaunes  
of lande, and See. And thereby do scarselye heare the  
name of Italy. But the Illirian nacions, dwellynge  
in a smale streyte, and possessing verye lytle grounde, The Set  
subiecte to the Romaynes, doo onely make seperati- tuatiō  
on betwene Italye, and Germanye. Wherfore, he cau  
led hys departure to be proclaymed, agaynst hys wyl,  
saynge that necessitye constrayned hym thereto. And ha-  
ving left behynde hym, as many men as seemed suffisient, for the cution of the Romayne lym-  
ites, and soztified the Cyryes, and Castels, with strog  
Garrisons, hym selfe departed spedelye agaynst the  
Germains, in the residue of hys hole armie. And ha-  
ving wyth spede eanded his tourneye, he pitched his  
Campe, vpon the banckes of the Rheyne, & there made  
provisiōn, for al necessaryes, belongyng to the warre.

In fyre, he made a Bridge of Shippes and Galleyes,  
ouer the Rheyne, and Danowe, that the Romaynes  
myghte passe to the other syde, by the same. For thole  
twoo are counted the greatest Ryuers of the Northe. Rheine.  
Of the wylch, the one passeth by the Germaynes, the Danu-  
other, by the Pannonians. And in the Sommer sea- bī.  
son, they are nauigable, wyth a large, and depe chan-  
nell. In wynter so harde overfroſen, that they are Panno-  
ridden vpon, as it were a field. For the Isle of the chan-  
nel is so stronge, and harde, that it not onelye bea-  
reth hooſes of horses, and feete of men, but also, they  
whyche come to fetche water there, brynging not wyth  
the, so many Cuppes, or Pailes, as they doo Hatchet-  
tes, & Mattockes. And when they haue therwith bro-  
ke the Isle, they carry the same away, without any ves-  
sell, as it were a ſtone. Suche is the nature of thole  
ryuers.

Alexander dyd set in Battayle, agaynst the Ger-  
maynes, manye Mauritanians, and a greate power  
of Archers, whyche he had broughte oute of the Ori-  
ent, some of theym beryng people called Osroheni- Osrohe-  
ans, the reſſe Parthyian fugytyues, whome he hadde mans.  
allured with money vnto him. For thole Souldours  
dyd most displeasure, & damage vnto the Germaines.  
Because

## The Historie of Herodian.

Because the Mauritanians do shoothe theyr arrowes from farre, are quycke, nymble, and swiste to skyppe, to and fro. And beynge all Archers, can easelye strike, the bare heades, of the Germaynes, and theyr greate bodyes, as it were an appoynted marke, in a Butte. Often tymes also, they foughte in playne batayle, hande to hande, from whence, the Germaynes, often tymes departed, nothyng Iusserours vnto the Romaynes.

Alexander beynge wyth theise troubles occupied, concluded to sende Dratours vnto them, to entreate of peace, in promysynge them money, and to geue the whatsoeuer they neaded, wyth great aboundinge of treasure. For the Germaynes, are chiefelye greadye of money, and often tymes for the same, doo sell theyr peace to the Romaynes. Wherefore Alexander endeavored to bye peace of them, rather then to hasarde the matter, in batayle. But the Romayne Souldours grudged greatlye, that they wasted theyr tyme in bayne, wythoute occasion of atchieuyng any thyng, whereby they myghte shewe theyr valyaunte corage, whyles Alexander, gaue hym selfe to Cartynge (as they sayde) and voluptuousnes, when it was more expedient to reuenge them selues, vpon the Germaynes, and to punylshe them, for theyr presumptuous audacite.

There was then in the armie, one Mariminus, of a certayne Village of Thrace, and that the obscu- rest wyth all, a man halfe Barbarous, whyche in his youthe, had bene a Shepherde, and after, hys yeares beyng encreased, for the heughte of hys bodye, and hys myghtye strengthe, was waged for a horsemans. Finallye, Fortune, as it were, leadynge hym by the hande, and goynge before hym, after he had ascended, by all degrees of offyces, in the warre, he aspired vnto the gouernement of the Armie, and Provinces. Thys Mariminus therefore, for hys experte knowledge in warrefare, dyd Alexander ordene Gouvernour of the youthe, to exercise them, in the feates of warre, and to make them apte, vnto syghte.

And

## The syxte booke.

Fo. lxxiiii.

And he omptyng no dilygence, so behaued him selfe Mariminus in that office, that he gaigned fauoure, of thole army: n<sup>o</sup> Lorde not onely, instructynge them, in all suche thinges, as of the were dayly to be done, but excecuting hym selfe, syrl Shoulde of all, the deades wyth the presente vse required. So ours, that he had them, not onely as Scolers, but also Companions of hys prowesse, whom he ioyned vnto hym wyth sundrye gyttes, & all kynde of honour. Wherefore the yonge men, of whom the greatest parte were Pannonianis) beynge topefull of the valeauntnes of Mariminus, did openly speake against Alexander: sayinge that he was yet vnder hys Moothers auctorite, and dyd all thynges after her commaundemente, settynge forwarde the warres verye slowelye, and with much cowardise. Thei repeted ofte within them selues, the greate myshappe, they had recevued in thorienthe throughe his delayes, and reprehended, that he had done nothyng valeauntly agaynst the Germaynes. Wherefore being prone of their nature to chaunge of thinges, greued with so longe contynuance of regiment (whereof they receyued lytle lucre) for that all ambition was longe before abolished) and assurde- lye truskyng that some other Prynce which shoulde attayne vnto the Soueraignitie, without lokynge for it woulde bestowe some moxe giftes, and honoure vpon them, thei concluded to murder Alexander, and afterwardes to create Mariminus Emperoure beynge their Companion in armes, and all other exercyses, and by his skyl in warfarre, moste apte for the warre presently in hande. Wherefore having by sundry bandes assembled into the fielde, when Mariminus came amogges them to instructe the yonge Souldours, they clothed hym with purple, and saluted hym as Emperour. Doubtfull it is, wether he were ignoraunte of the dryste, or els made prouie vnto the matter before. At the syrl he refused it, and rejected the purple. But when he saw the me of armes drawe furth their swordes, threatening to kyll him, wishing rather the daunger to come, then the peryll presente, he toke the honoure vpon hym: protestynge, that althoughe the same for-

W.i. tunc

The Historie of Herodian

tune, were erste by drazemes, and visions, shewed unto him, yet was he nowe unwillingly enforced by them to receiue it, onely because he would obey their myndes. Then he wylled them, to appoynte all thynges as they wold them selues, and taking their wepons, in preventinge the rumor of this matter, gote slea Alexander, who was ignozaunt of all that was done, that thereby his Souldiours, & the Garde of hys person, beyng with the lodeyne chaunce dismayed, shold either willingly assent vnto them, or els beyng unready, & loking for no suche happe, shoulde mangre theyz heades, be brought in subiectio. Then after he had enflamed their good willes towardes him, in dublynge their wages, and promisinge to geue them greate rewardes, & to pardon all their punyshmentes, he ledde them all vnto Alexander's Pavillion, incosnitely, for that it was not farre distant fro thence. When thiese thinges were declared vnto Alexander, he was greatly dismayed vnto the noueltye thereof. So that he ran out of his Tent, as a mad man, weeping, & trebling, now callyng Maximinus desloyall, and perjured person, with reckening of the benefytes, whiche him selfe had bestowed vpon him: and then, accusing the yonge Souldiours, whiche neglecting their othe, wold enterprize so perniciously, that facinerouse facte. And fynally, he offered to give them what thei woulde desire, and amende suche thinges as were amisse. Then the Souldiours whiche apartayned to hys Garde of hys person, making joyfull acclamacions vnto him, promised to defende him, with all their might and power. When the night was ones passed, and the dare began to daue, certaine of the Souldiours, brought worse vnto him, that Maximinus was at hande, for that they myght see the dusse raysed, and heare the noyse of a greate multitude not farre off. Wherefore Alexander came agayne into the fielde, & called togidhers his Souldiours, beseeching them to arde, and defende him, whome them selues had brought vp, and during whose raigne, by the space of .xxii. yeres, they had lived without discention. Then hauyng moued them

The seueneth booke.

Fol.lxv.

them all with compassion, he willed them to arme them selues, & stande in ordre of batayle, to resyll their enemies. But the Souldiours (although thei had before promised ayde vnto their Prince) dyd not wstaning shrinke away, by lytle, and little. Some of theim required the Captaine of the Garde, other of Alexander's frendes to be put to deathe: alledginge that they were the occasion of this Commocio. Other of them accused hys Moother, for that she was a coueteous woman: who in heaping, and hordyng of money, and throughte her pynchyng, sparyng, and greedy keapeing, from the Souldiours, had broughte Alexander into dysdayne wyth them all. Thus stode they talkyng, and moued not as yet. But as soone as tharmy of Maximinus was in syghte, and after he had encoraged them, to forslake a fylthy woman, and a weake yonge man, whiche lyued as yet vnder his Moother's commaundemente, and toyné them selues vnto a stronde, and balaunte man, theyz companion in Armes, and exercysed contynually wyth them, in feates of warre, furthwith, thei all togetheres reuolted fro Alexander, and with one assente saluted Maximinus as Emperour. Then Alexander fledde backe agayne into his Pavillion, trembling, and halle besydes hym selfe, and embrasyng his Moother, and (as it is reported) blamig her for that he suffered this calamity, for her sake, he aboade there, loking for the murderer.

Now Maximinus, after he was created Emperour by thole Armie, gaue in charge to the Tribune, and Capitaines, the murderinge of Alexander wyth hys Alexander Moother, and all other whiche shold make anye reuider & hys sytance. Thei furthwith entering by bvolence into Moother the Pavillion, slew both Alexander, and his Moother, & theyz with hys frendes, and evrye noble man, excepte a frende fewe, whiche a lytle before had made shyste for theim slayne. selues by fleeing away, and were hyd in corners. All the whiche, being shortly after apprehended, Maximinus dyd put to deathe. This ende of lyfe had Alexander, with hys Moother, when he hadde by the space of .xxii. yeres reigned, withoute any complainte of the Citezins, yea without any bloodsheddyng.

W.L.G.

fol.

## The Historie of Herodian

For detesting cruytpe, and murder he permitted no man to suffer, withoute he were by iudgemente condemned, so muche was he addicted to gentle benevolence. So that yf the coueyteous, and greadye Moo-ther, had not with fylthy couertise defamed her Sonne, there coulde no thyng haue bene wantyng, or wylled to be, in hys gouernement of Thempyre.

## C The Argumente of the Seuenth Booke of Hero- dyan.



He Begynninge of the seuenth  
Booke maketh mencion of Mar-  
tinus Crueltye, which passed  
ouer, and made warre vpon the  
Germanes. And at his returne  
to Rome, oppressed the people,  
wyth greuous exactions, and  
commytted much sacrilege, whi-  
che caused muche hurley burley  
amonges the people. How the nacion of Aphrique  
rebelled, and made Gordianus Emperoure, who  
was vanquylshed by Capellianus, Gouvernour of  
Mauritania. And after Gordianus deathe, howe  
the Senate elected Maximus, and Albinus, and  
with them yonge Gordianus. The audacite of  
Gallianus foloweth, and the myschiese that ensu-  
ed therewpon.

(?) (?)  
(?) (?)

## C The seuenth booke of the

Historie of Hero-  
dyan.



E haue in the former booke, at length declared, after what sort, Alexander behaued him selfe, duryng the. viii. yeres of his raygne. After whose death, Maximinus, hauyng obtainede the Empyre, alte-  
red the estate of all thynge, and abused verye cruellye, hys obtainede Power, so  
that frome a Gentle Gouernemente, he endeuered to chaunge it vnto cruell tyrannie. For percep-  
tynge him selfe to be odious vnto all men, because he  
wyste of all other, had aspyred vnto that Fortune, frō  
a base estate, belydes that, beynge aswell Barbarous  
of maners, as by nature greadye of bloudshed, he en-  
deoured chifelye, to establishe the Empyre vnto  
hym, through crueltye, fearyng least he shold be had  
in contempte of the Senate, and all other Romaines,  
whyles not hys present Fortune, but the obscurenes  
of hys byrthe, was specially noted in hym. For it was  
openlye knownen vnto all men, that he had been a  
shepherde in the Mountaynes of Thrace, and recea-  
ued amonges the symple, and base Souldyours of  
that region, for the greatnes, and strengthe of hys  
bodye, and nowe exalted vnto the Romayne Empyre,  
Fortune (as I myghte saye) leadynge hym by the  
hande.

Wherefore, wyste of all, he rooted oute of the Sena-  
te house, all the frendes and Councelours of Alexan-  
der, of the whyche some he dimissed to Rome, other  
some he depryued of theyz offyces, acculyng their for-  
mer administration therein. This dyd he, to the en-  
tent he myghte be alone, in the armye, hauyng no  
man of the nobilitye nyghe hym, but wythoute the  
reuerence of anye luch, as in a strong Fortresse, exer-  
cise hys tyranny. Then dyd he expell oute of the Im-  
periall

## The historie of Herodian

perial palisce, al the Seruauntes of Alerader, whom he had by so many yeares retayned in seruice, and did put some of them to death, fearing treason, because he perceaued them dolefully to lament the death of Alexander. But his tyranney was more augmented, thorough the opening of a certayne couspiracy agaynst hym, wherin many of the Captaynes, & the whole Seneate, were confedered.

There was a certayne man of the nobilitie, whiche had been Consul, named Magnus. The same was accused unto Maximinus, that he had intended treason against him, & persuaded the Souldours, to translate the Empyre unto him. Thys counsayle was supposed to be sache. Maximinus had made a Rydge ouer the ryuer, to passe agaynst the Germayns, haayng a greate appetite (after he had gottē thempyre) vnto warlike affayres. For being erected vnto Thempyre, through the huge quantitie of his bodie, his strenght, and skill in warfare, he endeououred with open deades, to confirme his same opinion of the souldours, to prave, therby, that the feare, cowardise, and slouth of Alexander, in warlike exercisles, was iustly by him condempned. Wherfore, he omitted nothyng that appertayned to the exercite of the men of warre. And beyng hym selfe daylye in armes, dyd therewith greatlye prouoke the courage of the Souldours.

After the aforesayde Rydge was syphshed, he determined, to passe ouer into Germayne. But then it was reported, that Magnus had entised a great number of Souldours, who excelled the other in prowes, especially of those, vnto whō the custody of the Rydge was committed, that allone as Maximinus were passed vnto the other syde of the riuier, they shold thowdowne the bridge, exclude him from all retourne, and therby betray him vnto the Germains. For h̄ depth, and breadeth of the ryuer was suche, that it seamed impossible for hym to gette ouer agayne, especiallye, because there was no kynde of bessell, on the further shore. Suche was the ramor of thys enterpryse. But Uncertayne it is, whether the same were truelye reported

## The seventh booke.

Fo.lxxvii.

ported, or ys forged of a purpose. For it is hard, to give a resolute Judgemente therein, bycause that wytchoute anye tryall, answere, or sentence, as manye as were onelye suspected, were putte vnto deathe.

At the same time, there began a great commotion, of the Ostrohenian Souldours also. For they beyng verye sorrowfull for the deathe of Alexander, and by happen, meatyng wth one of hys frendes, named Quarcius (who a lytle before hadde been dimissed by Maximinus frant the Campe) tooke hym agaynst hys wyll, when he loked for no suche matter, elected hym to theyr Captayne, clothed hym wth Purple, carped the lyre before hym, and so adorneed wth pernicious honours, exalced hym vnto the dignitie of Emperoure.

The whyche man, shortelye after, sleappuge in hys Pavillion, was by one of hys owne Companions, and (as it is supposed) hys frende, trayterously murdere. The same was named Macedonius, whyche had been before, Ruler of the Ostrohenians, and at that present, was fyfthe Author unto them, of revoltinge from Maximinus. And, althoughe there were no cause of grudge betwene him, and Quarcius, yet dyd he thus murder hym, whome hym selfe had fyfthe compelled to become Emperour.

Then thynkyng to shewe Maximinus some great pleasure, he caried vnto hym the head of Quarcius. But Maximinus, albeit he were glad of that facte, for that hys enemye was rydde oute of the waye, yet dyd he putte vnto extreme deathe thys Macedonius, (whych loked after some greate rewarde, and hoped to receave greate thankes for hys traualye) because he was Author of the rebellion, and murderer of one, whiche hym selfe had induced, maugre hys head vnto that mischiefe, and had been false vnto the man, whiche had mosse assayunce in hym.

These causes therfore, dyd exasperate the mynde of Maximinus, and kyndled hys furye, beyng alreadye of hys owne nature, ouer prone vnto crueltye.

W.iii.

He

Quarcius.

Macedonius.

### The historie of Herodian

He was besydes, horrible of visage, & of so huge, and myghty stature, that none of the most valiaunt Grekes, or mosse warlyke Barbariens myghte be compared unto hym.

When these thynges were thus set in order, he gathered together the whole Armye, passed wythoute feare ouer the Brydge, and made Battayle vpon the Germanynes. There folowed hym a wonderfull nomber of men, almosste all the power of the Barbariens, and wyth them verye manye Mauritanian Slynghers, and Archers. There folowed hym besydes, the Osrohenians, and Armenians, the one nacion beinge subiecte vnto the Romayne, the other associated in frendshyppe wyth them, they were accompanied wyth as manye Parthians, as beyng hyred or fugitvues, from theyr natvue countrey, or els taken in the warres, serued the Romayne.

Thys multytude of people, was fyffe leuyed by Alexander, & then augmented, and exercised, by Mariminius. The Slynghers, and Archers, seamed verye profytable in the warre agaynste the Germanynes, because they coulde easelye fryske theyr enemyes vware, and recule them selues furthewyth, into sure defensce.

Mariminius beyng entred wythin hys enemyes lande, and syndyng no man to resist hym (for all the Germanynes were fledde) pyllled and foraged the countrey (the Corne beyng then ryte) and permitted the Souldours to burne, and destroye, all the vilages. And in deade, the Townes and houses there, are verye muche subiecte to daunger of fyre.

The Ger  
manyne  
houses.  
For amonges the Germanynes, the Buyldynge wyth Stone, and Tyle, is verye rare and scarce. But wyth great peices of Tymber set in the earthe, and joyned together in thycke woodes, they make

(as it were) tabernacles. Mariminius then goynge forwardes, in wassynge the Countrey, sackynge the corne, and distributyng the Cattell, whiche was taken amonges the Souldours, founde not as yet, anye of hys enemyes. For they had abondoned all the

fielde

### The seventh boke

Fol. lxxviii.

fielde, playne, Countrey, and all places, dessolute of trees, and hydde them selues couertly in the woodes, and marshes, that thei myght there syghe, and with sodeyne assaultes, traide their enemyes: because the chickenesse, and mygh growing togither of the trees, seemed to become a great impediment vnto the arrowes, and darts, of heyr enemies. And thei thought, that the depth of their marshes, and Dooles, would be daungerouse vnts the Romayne, for that thei wers ignoraunte of the passages, and Countrey. But vnto them selues, very easye, and profitable, because they wading dally through them, vp to the knees, perfectly knewe, whiche were the passable foordes, & whiche vnpossible to get ouer. And truly, the Germanynes are verye cunnyng in swymming, as men, which onely swymme, and bathe them selues in Ryuers. In these places therfore, was the battayle begon, where fyffe of all the Romayne Emperour enterprised the conflycte very valiantly. For when thei were come vnto a greate, & broade Maryshe, within the whiche, the Germanynes had retayzed them selues, the Romaines, beinge alearde to pursue their enemyes, Mariminius fyffe entered upon a great Courser, into the Maryshe (wher his horse fouldered to y belye) & slewe with great māhode, many of the Barbarous people, whiche resyded. Wherefore the resydue of thame, beyng pricked wyth shame, yf they shoulde forlake their Emperour, nowe syghtyng for them, aduentured them selues also into the Maryshe. And then were there slayne, many of eyther parte, but so, that there was no Barbarien leste a lyue, the Romayne Emperour syghtyng mosse valyauntly. Wherby the Maryshe beyng fyllled wyth deade carcases, and the lake beyng myngled wyth bloode, caused it to seame, that thys foote Battayle was foughte wyth syopes vpon the water.

This victory, wyth other hys stoute, and myghty factes, he not onely sygnysyd vnto the Senate, and people of Rome, by letters, but also beyng printyd in a great Table, caused it to be publyshed before the

X. I.

Coopte,

## The historie of Herodian

Cooze, that the Romaynes myghte not onely heare  
of hys valyaunte deades, but also haue theim perfect  
ly expressed before theyr eyes.

The same Table, with the rest of hys honours, the  
Senate afterwardes pullyd downe, and abolysched.  
There were manye other skyrmishes, and batayles  
foughten, wherein hym selfe, throughte hys syrte gy-  
uynge the onsette, and manfull fyghtyng) gate ever  
the price, and renowne. Then he retourned, against  
the wynter season, into Pannony, wryth manye pzy-  
soners, and greate boortye of Catayle. And wynter-  
ryng wrythin the Cytre of Syzium, ( whiche is  
the greatest Cytre of that Countrey) he prepared all  
necessaries, for hys dyage, agaynst the spryng time:  
threatyng, wholy to subdue all the Barbarouse na-  
cions of the Germaynes, eue to the Ocean. The whi-  
che thing, it seemed, he woulde assuredly bynge to  
passe, such a one was he, in the affaires of warrefare,  
and shuld haue obtayned a wonderfull glory throught  
hys factes, yf he hadde not bene more outragious  
to hys owne subiectes, then to hys enemyes. But  
to what purpose, are the Barbariens slaine, yf much  
more murder, be commytted wrythin the Cytieself of  
Rome, and the nacions subiecte therunto: or what  
auayleth it to haue plentye of Captiues, and pyses  
of beastes, yf by hys conquestes, and fortune, the Ro-  
mayne theim selues, be dyspoyled of all they haue.  
For, not onely free lyertye, but also entryng, was  
givē, vnto pernicious promoters, to accuse, and cy-  
cumente wryth fraude, whome thei woulde. Pea, and  
to renewe ( yf neade were) faultes before done, by  
mens Auncelours, some of them vnkownen, and vn-  
hardes, butyll that present instaunt. Neþher was  
there any man detected of anye offence, but the same  
was furthwyth condempned, and all his goodes con-  
fiscate. Wherby, a man myghte daylye see, dy-  
uerse whiche before were wonderfull ryche, and wel-  
thye) nowe begge theyr breade: So greate was the  
reuytyle of hys Tyranye, whyles he dystributed

Hirniū.

The erac-  
tions of  
Marini-  
nus.

money  
to the  
menne  
of warre.  
His eares  
besydes  
were open  
vnto all  
complayntes,  
so that he  
had no regard  
to any mas-  
age, or dignitie.  
For manye  
Capptaines  
of armes,  
Gouern-  
ours of prouinces,  
wryth dyuerse  
that hadde  
Counslles,  
and for theyr  
merites tryumphed,  
being  
ones for anye  
sonde trifle,  
or lyghte  
cause accused,  
he caused  
furthwyth  
to be appre-  
hended: and  
puttyng  
theim in  
Chariottes  
alone, wrythout  
any Seruaunte  
attendyng  
wypon  
theim,  
compelled  
theim, to come  
oute of the  
Calte, and  
Weste ( yf  
the chaunce so  
happened )  
and oute of the  
Southe also,  
vnto Pannony,  
where hym selfe  
soioured.  
And there  
spoylyng  
theim of all  
theyr  
substaunce,  
and entreatyng  
theim  
wryth  
mosse  
shamefull  
sclaunders,  
he afflycted  
theim  
wryth  
death, or  
banyshementes.  
But as longe,  
as one,  
or two,  
suffered  
thiese  
domages,  
and the layde  
calamity  
passeid  
not theyr  
lynage,  
the common  
people,  
lytle  
regarded  
it. For  
the aduerse  
chaunces  
of Kyche,  
and welthy  
menne,  
were not  
onely  
of the  
Commons,  
neglected,  
but also  
manye  
of theim,  
of a frowarde  
mynde,  
and peruerse  
wyll, in  
despyte  
of the  
Kyche  
men,  
were verye  
gladde  
wryth  
the same  
theyr  
myse-  
ries.

## The seventh booke

Fol. lxxix.

But after that Marinus, hadde thus broughte  
vnto extreme pouertye, the famylies of many noble,  
erileges and famouse menne, reckenyng theim of no value, of Mar-  
inus, and but tryffles towardes the satysfience of hys out-  
ragious couercousnes, he tourned hys mynde vnto  
the Robberye, and spoylyngs, of the common Tre-  
asye.

For what so ever money hadde bene before  
layde vp, for the Common prouision of Corne, or  
what so ever Ryches remained, to be dystributed  
amonges the people, wryth all suche Treasoure  
as serued to the deckynge of the Theaters, and  
gorgiouse settynge furthe of festyuall Pomps, and  
playes, the same euerye iore, he adiudged to hym-  
selfe.

For what so ever money hadde bene before  
layde vp, for the Common prouision of Corne, or  
what so ever Ryches remained, to be dystributed  
amonges the people, wryth all suche Treasoure  
as serued to the deckynge of the Theaters, and  
gorgiouse settynge furthe of festyuall Pomps, and  
playes, the same euerye iore, he adiudged to hym-  
selfe.

Welsydes

E.g.

## The historie of Herodian

Welsydes that, the gyftes of all the Temples, the Sta-  
tues, and honours, of all the Goddes, and famouse  
men, wþt what so euer publycke worke, Ciyyll or-  
namentes, or matter, whyche seamed conueny-  
ente to make money of, were put to the fyre. Whi-  
che thing dyd chieslye gnatwe, and here the hartes of  
the people, i caused, as it were, a cowmō mourning,  
saying, that wþthoute warre, or battayle, the Cypte  
was lyke to be assaulted, & taken, so that many of the  
people auentured to resotte hym, and to defende the  
Temples, wþshynge rather to be slayne before than-  
ters of the immortall Goodes, then to see theyz Cou-

Rebel'is  
& bittter  
Curses a  
gainst  
Marini-  
nus.

trey destroyed. And hereby chiesly, did the myndes of  
the Commo people, beginne to grudge against him,  
throughoute all the Cyptes of Chenipyre. Neþher  
were the Souldiours the selues very glad wþch it, for  
that theyz neyghbours, and kynsolke rebuked them,  
and imputed to theyz faulce, that Maximinus dyd

thus behaue hym selfe. Thiese enormities, therefore,  
beynge of no small importaunce, dyd prouoke the pe-  
ple to hatred, and rebellio. But hitherbinto thei med-  
led not, saue onely wþt wordes, callynge vppon the  
Goddes, whome Maximinus had offended, for that  
there was none durste take vppon hym, to reuenge  
the cause: vntyl that after thre yeres eande of hys  
Keygne, vppon a lyghte occasyon (as the assayres of  
Tyrtauntes, are waueringe, and subiecte to chaunge)  
the Affricans, fyfste enterpryzed to fall to Armes,

and rebellyon, and this was the cause. There was a  
certaine Liuetenaunt in Cartilage, who wanted no-  
thyng, that appertayned to extreme furþe, and ou-  
ragious Tyranny. The same crepte into his Prin-  
ces fauour, by condempning of men, & torturing of mo-  
nei. For Marimin loued the most of al other, whō he

knew to be of his own secte & factio. So þ, whosoeuer  
therfore had the charge of Theperozs treasour, whe-  
ther thei were good me (which very sealdome hap-  
pened) or deposed frō their office, or elles feared wþ the pre-  
sent peryll, beynge iþrall of hr's unsatiable auarice  
dyd (alough he unwillingly) folow, & accompany þ rest.

This

## The seventh boke. Fol. lxxviii.

Thys aforenamed Liuetenaunte of Affrica, ha-  
uyng violentlye commyted, manye greate enormi-  
ties, dyd also compasse, to eracte moneys furþwþt,  
of certayne noble, and ryche yonge men (whome he  
had by fraude circumuerted wþt condempnation)  
and to depryue the of all theyz Patrimonye, & ryches,  
which theyz Auncellours had left them. With whiþ  
thyng, the yonge men beyng incensed, dyd in deade  
promise to paye the same, demaundynge three dayes  
respyte, for the payment.

And in the meane whyle, conspyzyng together,  
as manye as had alreadye suffered, or feared hereaf-  
ter to suffer affliction, commaunded the yonge men  
theyz seruautes, to come from theyz Villages, and  
Farmes, with Clubbes, and Axes, vnto them.  
They executyng their Maisters commaundemen-  
tes, came all together before dawe lyghte, into the Cy-  
pte, hydyinge vnder theyz Garmentes, such weapons,  
as in that sydayne tumulte, they had gotten.

There was assembled, a wonderfull greate num-  
ber of men. For in Affrica beyng it selfe greateþy re-  
plenished wþt people, there were at that tyme, ma-  
nyne Labourers, and Husbande men also. After the  
daye appeared: he yonge men, commaunded theyz ser-  
uautes to wayte neare vpon them, as though he they  
were some of the Lowne people, and not to shewe  
theyz weapons, or begynne anye violence, vntyl they  
saw the menne of Armes, or elles of the common  
people, assaulte theym to reuenge the facte, whyche  
they woulde shortlye commyte. They theym sel-  
ues, hydyinge theyz Daggers in theyz bolomes, went  
into the Liuetenaunte house, saynyng he they woulde of Affrik  
speake wþt hym, touchyng the payment of the mo-  
ney, and furþwþt sodeynlye there slewe hym, when  
he suspected no suche casaultye.

Then bys Souldiours, drewe furþe the theyz swo-  
des, and endeoured to reuenge the murder. But the  
Husbandemen, and Laborers, ranne immediatlye  
to the bycker page, and there stoutlye foughte for their  
Maisters, and easelyley constrained all theyz enemys

The Go-  
uernour  
of Affri-  
ca.

nes, hydyinge theyz Daggers in theyz bolomes, went  
into the Liuetenaunte house, saynyng he they woulde of Affrik  
speake wþt hym, touchyng the payment of the mo-  
ney, and furþwþt sodeynlye there slewe hym, when  
he suspected no suche casaultye.

to

## The historie of Herodian

to turne their backes, & fle. Whē hē enterprise was after this wise attchiued, yong mē, hauing so desperatly set vpō hē matter, rekened one only helpe to remaine for them. That is, if thei heaped vpō this late committed mischiosus act, a moze heinous offece. Wherefore thei determined to associat in the peryl vnto them, the greater hour of the Province, & to induce y mündes of the people, vnto rebelliō, y whiche thei knew to be wished for, of the al, through hē hatred of Maximinus, but as yet prohibited frō it, through feare. Wherefore, in the deape of the night, thei went w all y multitude, to the Proconsuls house. The same was Gordianus, whē obtained y office, whe he was. iiiii. score yeres old, and had been gouernour of many Provinces before, and approued in sundry weyghty affaires. And therefore thei thought, that he would, without difficultie, take y rule of thempyre vpō him, as y fynall eande of his former dignities, & that he shoulde be a Prince gratesfull vnto y Senate, & people of ROME. For that, besides his noblenes of byrth, he had by diuers honors, as by steps, ascended vnto the regymtent of Thempyre.

Now it happened, y the very same day that these thinges were in doing, Gordianus remained within hys owne house, hauing deferred his busynes vntill another time, & suspended for then the administratiō of all thynges. The yonge men wyth their swordes being accōpanied w a great number of people, repulſed his Porters, & entred w force into the house, and foind him resting him self vpō his Bed, where thei thrōged about the old mā, clothed him w purple, & saluted him w imperiall honors. But he beinge astonied w the sōvayn chaſſice, & supposing it to be a deceite, wrought of purpose against him, let him selfe fall to the ground frō his bed, beseeching thei, to haue cōpassiō vpō an old mā, whiche had never offendē thei, and to obserue theyr truelth, and allegiaunce, towards their Prince. Then whiles thei thus perseuered, holding their swordes in their handes, & whiles Gordianus, partly throughe feare, partly through ignorance, knewe not what the matter ment, or what was the cause of so sodayne fortune,

## The seuenth boke.

Fol. lxxxi,

tune, one of the yongmen, whiche excelled the rest in nobilitie, & eloquēce, hauing comauded the vnto silēce, holding his sword by the Wytes, spake after this sort.

Of twoo perpls, of y which thone is present, & ma-  
nifest, thother doubtful, & of uncertain eand, thou must des of one  
this day chose one. That is, either to preserue vs, & thy  
self, & coēceue as good hope, as we already have, or els  
without delay, suffer death by our handis. And if thou  
chose the better, the are there many occasions of good  
hope. For thou shalt rid out of the waye Maximinus,  
of all the wozde abhozed, as a pestiferous plague, of  
cruell tyraunye, & adde vnto thy life (whiche thou hast  
hitherto vrtuously led) famous glory & renoume,  
obtayninge of the Senate, and people of ROME eter-  
nal honour, & perpetual praise. But if thou reject it, &  
deny to conspire with vs, we wyll out of hand put the  
to death: and our selues also (yf neade be) wyll accom-  
pany the in dyng. For we haue enterprised a greater  
matter, then that we can be safe without desperation.  
The minister of tyraunye is dead, and hath receaved  
condigne punyshement for hys cruelty, beinge a lytle  
earste, slayne wyth oure handes. Wherefore, y thou  
wylt consent wyth vs, and become partaker of oure  
perplles, thy selfe shalte obtayne the Emperore. And  
then the faulte, whiche we haue committed, shall be  
reputed, more worthye, prayse, then punyshemente.

Whyles the yonge man spake theysse wor-  
des, the rest of the multyptude, beyng vnpacient of  
staþe, or tarivnge (seyng all the Cytyzyns whiche  
had hearde of the matter, were assembled, toge-  
ther) wyth one accordē, pronounced Gordianus Em-  
perore.

Then he (albeit, he had before refusid it, and excused  
him selfe by hys age, yet beyng of nature ambitious  
and desyrous of glorie) dyd wythoute resisstance, take  
the honoure vppon hym: myndyng, rather to enter  
into the daunger to come, then the peril present. Besi-  
des that, he thoughte not good, to refuse it, seyng his  
age was come to that perfection, but (if the case so re-  
quired) to dys Emperore of ROME.

Wherfore

Libia.  
Affrikes

### The historie of Herodian

Wherfore, incotinently after hys, al Affrique began to rebell, and manye Cptyes, pulled downe the honours of Maximinus, and erected Images of Gordianus. And hym they named of theym selues, Africani. For those whyche inhabite the Northe Coste of Lybpa, are called in the Romayne tonge Aphryques.

Tisornus at Tyldram, in the whyche Cytye, all these chynges were done, and posseslyng the name, and apparell of Carthage, remoued vnto Carthage, that in the same Cytye, beynge verye great, and muche frequented, all the rynges myghte be ordered, as in Rome. For Carthes and thage, in haboundaunce of rychesse, resorte of people, bvguesse or greatnesse of compasse, gey pinge onelpe preheminence to Rome, dooth contende wyth Alerandrie in Egypte, for the seconde place. Thynher folowed Gordianus, all the pryncypall Pompe, wyth all the Soul dyours in those partyes, and the Cytye yonge men, of tall, & comely stature, like in similitude vnto them at Rome, whiche garde the Emperours person, with Laurell roddes in theyz handes, whereby the Princes are discerned from priuate personnes. There was fyre also, accordyng to the usage, caryed before hym, so that Carthage, for a small space, dyd represenct the forme and Fortune of Rome.

From thence, Gordianus sent manye letters, vnto euerye Sagistrate of Rome, and to the noble men of the Senate, amonges whomie there were verye manye hys frenedes and alyes.

He wrote besydes, vnto the wholle Senate and people of Rome, sygnifying vnto them, the fauour of the Affrycans towardes hym: and therwithall accusing the cruytyle of Maximinus, whiche he perceaneed to be detested of al men. Hym selfe vsed al gentlenes, and assabilityle. For he punyshed wyth erple, all vntrewe Promoters, and Accusers, and vnto theym whiche were vnyghitously therefore condemned, he gaue free lybertye, to defende theyz owne. Pea, he resfored those whyche tosse were banwyshed, to theyz natyue Countreyes agayne, & prouyded to geue to the Soul dyours

### The seuerth booke.

Fol.lxxxii.

dious, more rewardes, and to dystribuite amonges the people moxe gystes, then any man before him had done. He brought to passe also, that Wyttalian, þ Lord Utalia, greate Maister of Maximinus houscholde, a ma outragious and cruell, but mosse deare, and welbeloued of Maximinus, was layne within the Cytie ielse of Rome. For suspecting, that that man, in relysing of hys enterpryses, would with feare cause other alio to turne fr om hym, he sente the Lyuetenant of the Province, a stoute yonge ma, stronge of body, of flouryng age, and ready to attempte any peryll for hys sake, with certayne Capitaines, and dyuerse Soul dyours in hys company: vnto whome he delyuered letters sealed wyth two Seales, by the which Themperours vsed to sygnysyre their priuys Couelles, and assayres. These he commaunded to entre into the Cytye before dayel yghte, and (whyles Wyttalian were busyd in hys accustomed assayres) to go vnto him in to the Chamber, where he was wonte to enquyre of the secret thinges, whiche appertayned to the safegard of hys Prince: shewynge hym, that thei had secrete letters vnto him from Maximinus, and woulde, all other set a parte, commune with him, of thinges belonging to the Princes person, in declaring vnto him the Emperours mynde. And then, whyles he were occupied in the loking vpon the Seales, thei shuld murder hym, wyth their daggers, hydde in their bosomes of purpose. All whych enterpryse, was attchyued as he wryshed. For before the dauning of the dawe (when as he accustomed to come furthe) thei shuld Utalianus almoste alone, w a fewe onely standinge aboute him) because some were nat as yet come vnto him, some other, after their salutaciō done, were departed before it was day lighte. Wherefore, finding hym at leasure, and a fewe standing before the Chamber doore, after thei had declared those thinges whiche we before spake of) thei were easly let in, & haung deliniered their letters whiles he diligently regarded the sygnettes thereof, The deawe out their daggers, & slew hym. And then depar the of Cled out of the Chamber, with their daggers naked in talianus.

Z. I.      theyz

### The Historie of Herodian

their handes, every man giuing them place, and way to passe. For they supposed, it had bene done by Mariminus commaundement, for that he was woon't often tymes so to do by them, whome a lytle before, he most entierly loued. Then they going through the streate, which hight Sacia via, shewed furthe the Epistle of Gordian vnto the people, and delyuered letters from hym, vnto the Counsilles the selues, and other Magistrates of Rome, sprading by rumors abroade, that Marimyne was already slayne.

The which thing being ones disbulged, immediatly al the people ranne throughe the streates, fr̄ one place, to an other, lyke men distracte of their right senses. For as the common people, are in every place, vnconstaunce, & prone to newe chaunges, so are the Romaine people, chiesly, more loauering, and bristedfaste, then mayne all other: beynge knyghte, of a greate, and dypuerse, multitude of straungers.

Then were the Images of Marimyne, with the reste of his honours, furthwith pulled downe. And the hatred againte hym, before, throughe feare hyden, they did now, after a free libertie gotten, and no man prohibyting them, powre, and spyrte oufe. The Senate also, beynge often assembled (albeit they had no certayne reporte of Mariminus estate, yet coniecturing by the present fortune, the rumour to be true) did abolyshe all his honours, and pronounced Gordianus, & his Sonne, Emperours.

Gordianus & his sonne fled away, or elles were slayne, by those, whom they had before offred. The Sollicitors, vsypdes of Mariminus, and suche as late in iudgemente, in the miste king of his Tyranny, were by the common people, draiven throughe the streates, and thrownen into the common syrkes of the Citye. In this bypose, there were many innocentes slayne. For every leude perso entered violently into the haule of hys creditor, or aduersarie in the lawe, or of any other, whome upon never so lyghte an occallis he hated, and ther dispiled him of hys goodes, and murdered hym. Thus vndec colour

### The seveth booke. Fol. lxxxiii.

coloure of liberty, and pretence of peace, the very deades of Cyuil warre were committed, so that there was slayne with the diate of a clubbe, Sabinus the Lyttenaunte of the Citye, whiche endeououred to appease Sabinus this busye tumulte. Thise things dyd the peoplie. slayne.

Aster the Senators hadde ones entered into thys peryl, they dyd, throughe feare of Marimine, sollicite in all thei coulde, the Provinces to rebellyone.

Wherfore, ther were Ambassadores chosen of the chiesest of the order of Senators, and Knyghtes, the whiche were sente unto the gouernours of the Princes, with letters, wherein was at length, declared the mynde of the Senate, and people of Rome, whiche exhorted the sayde Kulers to haue a specyal regarde to their native countrey, to defendethe Coorte of Rome, and perswade the nations vnder them, to contine we in their allegiaunce, towarde the Romayne people, whose dominion ouer them, and auncient bonde of amitie with them, was by their progenitours longe agone, ordyned. Many of those Gouernours, receaved the Ambassadores very greatly, and enduced the people to resolute: the which was easly brought to passe, in so greate hatred was Mariminus had wyth every man. They therefore, hauing oufe of hande slayne all suche Magistrates amonges them, as were of Marimines parte) did all togithers turne vnto the Romaynes. Yet were there a fewe Kulers, which either flied the Ambassadores, y cam vnto them, or elles sent them vnder sure custody vnto Marimyne, who with moost cruel tormentes, dyd put them to deathe. This was the mynde, this was the wyll, of the Citye of Rome. The whyche hurley butley, beynge reported vnto Mariminus, althoughe he were sozowfull wythall, yet dyd he sayue, that he vitterly contempned it, and the fyrt, and seconde daye, remayned quiete, wythin hys owne houle, consultinge wyth hys secreete friendes, abouete the same mater. And althoughe the hole armee, and people of that Regyon knewe, and vnderstode, all thys busynesse, and were prone also

The Historie of Herodian

also to renolte, sturred with the boldenes, and neuel-  
tive of so greate enterpryses, yet dyd every man holde  
his peace, taking bpon him to be ignorant of the case  
so greatly was Maximinus scarcd amounges them, that  
nothing was hidden from hym. For he dyd not onely  
herke vnto every mans wordes, but also, watch, and  
prise, vpon the gesture of their faces, and handes.

The thirde daye, he caused all the Souldours, to as-  
semble in a playne before the City, and there him selfe  
sitting in a highe throne, reherced oute of a booke, an  
oration, his by frendes composed, and peined before,  
thus.

**The ora-  
tion of  
Maximi-  
nus.** I know verily, that I shal declare vnto you, a thing  
strange, & incredible, but (as I my selfe suppose) nor  
worthy so muche wonder, as laughter. Thei are not  
the Germanynes, so often vanquysshed, that do mous-

**Sarma-  
tians.** warre against you, and your valiantnes, neyther the  
Sarmatians, whiche dayly treat wth vs for peace  
**Mesapo-  
tamie.** The Persyās also, which ones wasted Mesopotamia  
dothe nowe ware wyse, in quietinge theim selues,  
wythin their owne houses: beyng taughte, partely  
wyth poure valiantne pwores in warrefare, partely  
with the enpryses, whiche I haue archiued: where-  
with, thei became aquaynted, when I had the gouer-  
naunce of the Arme, for their passage, ouer the Ry-  
uers.

**Procon-  
sill.** But (lesse I shold deceyn you with a thyng moze  
woorthye laughter,) the Cartaginenses are become  
madde, and wyth an infotunat olde man, whiche do-  
geth through the extremite of age / I doute whether he  
were perswaded, or compelled therunto / thei do, as it  
were, in a stage entelude, play, and take the Princi-  
palite upon them. For to what Arme do thei truste,  
when as Bergantes, and Catchpolles, doe supplye  
the Proconsilles couine amounges theim: what wea-  
pons wyl thei beare, scynghe thei haue none but smale  
speares, to hunte wilde beastes withal: And in seade  
of warlike exercisles, thei vse dausting, & singing of Val-  
lades, & Garroles. Let not y thinges which are repozed  
to

The seventh booke.

Fo. lxxxiii.

to be done wthyn the City of Rome. Wshynge you to  
that Italiain is fayne, by vicescyle, howe vnsitable the  
myndes of the Romanines be, and howe prompt they  
courage is, to relye to make shoutes, it is manifest vnto  
you. If these ii. o. iii. armed men, they thrisse one an-  
other forwarde to the daunger, in spuryng one an-  
other: and fleinge awaie, euerie man from hys owne  
daunger, they neglecte the common peryll.

If any man hath reported vnto you, the thynges done  
by the Senate, there is no cause why you shoulde  
meruarle, that oure continencie leaueth ouer harde,  
vnto theym, and thereby that the agremente of Cor-  
dianus inuers, wth theyrs, and hys voluptuouse  
lyfe, is by theym preferred before vs. For amonges  
them all, valiancette, and graue deades, are coun-  
ted austere, and tyraunce, and all dissolute lyfe, is  
estemed gentle, and pleasaunte. They feare therefore  
oure gouernance, because it is moderate, and labo-  
rious, and they reioyse at the name of Cordian,  
whose infame of lyfe is not unknowne vnto you.

Wherfore, agaynst them, and suche as they are, you  
haue to warre. O Souldours! if a man maye, at the  
leaste wyse, call it warre. For my mynde geueneth me,  
and so maye all other thyngke, that before we approche  
neare vnto Italye, the greatest parte of theym, wyll  
humble mee te vs, wth Laurell Bowes in theyr  
handes, and carvinge theyr Chyldren wth them, fall  
prostrate at oure feete: or elles, beyng stryken wth  
cowardye feare, runne awaie, leauyng all theyr  
goodes behynde theym for me to take, and distribute  
amonges you, that you may enioye the same for euer.

When he had thus muche spoken, and enterlaced  
hys talke, wth manye scornewfull reproches of  
the whole Cypte, and Senate of Rome (threatenyng  
them, wth the gesture of hys handes, and wth ter-  
rible countenaunce, and menacyng them as though  
they had been preset) he proclaymed his voyage towar-  
des Italy. And then hauninge geuen vnto the Souldy-  
ours much monei, he soiourned ther for one dai. That  
passed, he entred into his iourney, leadynge wth him  
a mer-

## The historie of Herodian

A mernaylaus great armye, and all the Romaine power. There folowed hym also a great number of Germanes, not to be neglected, whonie he had eyther by force subdued, or els associated in amicte vnto hym. He carped besides divers engens and Instrumentes of warre, with other thynges whiche he had prepared before againu the Barbarous nacions. Now did he marche slowelye because of the wagons, and other necessaries for the warre, whiche were carryed in hys compayne. For syng that iourney happened sodelye vnto hym, the thynges expedient for the Souldours were not gathered by anye mans provision, as it was sofore accustomed, but they were then hastelye as it came to hande, taken and carryed. Therfore he determined to send before, the Pannonian bandes, in whome he had great confidence, whiche also fyfste saluted him for Emperour, and willyngly attempted all perylles for hys saufegarde. Theyse he commaunded to set forwarde, before the reste of the hoste, and to enter into Italpe.

But whyles Maximinus was thus in hys tourney, his affaires had better successe in Carthage, then he looked for. For there was a certayn man named Capellianus, of the order of the Senatours, Lieutenaute of Mauritania, which is subiect to the Romans, and of the named Numidia. This nacio was fortified with strong armes of men, whiche defended it, from the invasions of y Barbaricus theyr neyghbours, wherby he had aboue hys person, no small bande of men at armes. Betwene this Capellianus, and Gordyan, there was muche discencion, aboue a certayne controversie in the lawe. Therfore, after Gordian had obtained the name of Emperour, he sente one to succeade Capellianus in hys office, & commaunded him to depart from the rule of the Province. But he disdayning therat, & beynge true to hys Prince (of whom he had receaued that dignitie) gathered all the power he had together. And after he had exhortid them, to continuwe theyr truch, and othe of allegiance, he reneged towardes Carthage, leadynge wytch hym a won-

derfull

Capelli-  
anus  
Mauri-  
tania.  
Numi-  
dia.

## The seventh booke.

Fo. lxxxv.

derfull greate and stronge Armye, in the whycche there were verye manye menne, not onelye of sturyshynge age, but also instructed in the handeslyng of all kyndes of weapons, and expert in warrefare, and (through usage of skymythes wytch the Warbaryens theyr neyghbours) verye vrompte, quycke, and readye to battayle, at all tymes.

When it was declared vnto Gordyan, that Capellianus was commynge towardes Carthage, bothe hym selfe, was stryken wytch a soleyne tremblyng feare, and all the Cartagynenses greatly dismayed, who in a dysordred heape wytchoute anye warelyke order (yet hauninge hope of victorye) thrusste hemselfes forwarde oute of the Cypte, to meete wytch Ca-

pellianus. The olde man Gordian(as some reporte) allone as Capellianus appreched to the Cypte, desparrying of al good hope, because he perceaued Marimine to haue a greate power of men then in Africca remaynyng, hanged hym selfe. But the Comynynalte, kepyng secrete hys death, rid chose his son for theyr Capitayne. So it came to hande scrappes. The Cartagynenses were many more in number, but yet out of order, and hys blyfull in the warres, and being effeminated with bankettes of voluptuousnes, wanted weapons, and all other warelyke instrumentes.

For no man brought out of his house, any other weapon, then eyther a Dagger, a Hatchet, or a Hunteynge staff, or els a Speare hardened in y syre, as they could get for y defencce of their bodies. On the contrary part, were Numidians, notable Slingers, and verye connyng horsemen, so that wout Bridle, they coulde rule their horses w a Rodde. Therfore y Cartaginenses were easely repulsed, & constrained to flye. For beynge vnable, to abide the brunt of their enemies, thei thraw away theyr harness, and weavons, and tourned theyr backs altogether in a rude plispe, & thrusting thongh thegincnes and tredyng one uppitan another, there dyd a greater les ouer, number veryphe amonges theym selues, then was comen. Gayne by theyr enemys.

And

### The historie of Herodian

And in thys thronge, was Gordianus Sonne slayne, Gordianus and as manye as folowed hym. So that for the multynnes Sonnede of those that were deade, they coulde not discerne slayne in the bodies that shoulde be enterred. Neþher coulde þ thōȝe, the boode of the younge Gordian be founde. For of so greate a number, whyche fledde, there entered but verye fewe into the Citye agayne, who sauued themselfes, by lurking, in darke, and unknownen corneres. The reste, remaynyng in heapes at the gate, & presynge forwardes, euery man to get in syrie, were by the Numidian Slynghers, and other armed Souldours, slayne. Whiche caused a mervailouse lamentacion, and houlynge of women, and Chyldren, for that they sawe before þeir owne faces, þeyr dearest frenðes, slayne.

There be whych reporte, that as soone as Gordianus (who for hys age abode wþin hys owne house) hearde that Capellianus was entered into the Cypte, dispairing of hys safegarde, went into hys chamber, as though he woulde scape, and wþth hys Gyrdle whych he had about hym, hanged hym selfe.

Thys was the eande of Gordianus, who was fortunate in the former parte of hys lyfe, and nowe eanded the sanie, in a synnytude of the Imperyal bygnicve.

Then Capellianus entred into Carthage, & ther put unto deathe, euery one of the noble men, whiche remained oute of the surye of the Battayl. Neþher dyþ he abyayne, from the sporlyng of the Temples, and ransackinge all Publyke, and priuate Treasures, And goþing unto other Cityes, whiche had abolisched the honours of Maximinus, the chieflist therin he put to deathe, and the reste he afflyted wþth tormentes: permytryng the Souldours, to burne, and robbe, the Villages, & Fvedes therabout, vnder a pretence of revengyng Maximinus: but yee priuelye allaryng the Souldours heartes unto hym selfe, to the eande, that if Maximinus sped not wel, him selfe might haue the Souldours good wylles, for the obtaynyng of the Emperie. Such was the estate of the assayres in Africa.

### The seventh booke

Fol. lxxxv.

Africa. But after þ the death of Gordian was heard of in Rome, a neruaprouse terrorre enuaded the Senate, & people of Rome, for that he was lost, in whō, all their hope, was sytuare. For thei knewe now perfectly, þ Maximinus wold spare no man being partly of his owne mynde alyenated from theim, and then with an enemys stonake, and manifeste hatred, for iuste causes, detesting them. Wherefore, thei assebled oftētymes togithers, consulting what thei might do, and synally (seyng thei had entered into one peryll) determined to prepare for warre, and elected two Emperours, whiche shoulde wþth equall auctorite, gouerne the common wealthe, leste that the Principall dominion, shoulde returne unto Tyranny.

Thei assembled therefore, I saye, not in the Coorte as thei were wonte before, but in the Temple of Jupiter Capitolyne, the whiche beyng buylded in the highest place of the Citie, the Romaines haue in most estimacion. There, the doores beyng shute, they satte alone, & hauinge, as it were, God to their witnesse of their Counsell, and the beholder of all þ thei intended, thei chose furth such as excelled the reste in age, and dignity, to giue their voyces of election vnto. Out of the whiche hole numbre, ther were two, named Maximinus, and Albinus, through the mooste voyces, creaþed Emperours. Of thiese two Maximus hadde often binus bene generall Capitaine in the warres, and also ouþ created hym selfe very politiquely, in the gouernaunce Empereþ of the Citie, wherby he cauled the people to haue a very good opinion of hys wytte, prouidence, and contynet lyfe. And Albinus, being a noble man borne, twise Counsell, and hauing ruled many prouinces, without strife or complaynte, was reputed the nicker. Thus were thei made Emperours, by the decree of the Senate, and endewid wþ all Thimperyal honours. But whiles theise thinges were in doing in the Capitolle, the Romain people (vncertain it is, whether through the solliciting of Gordianus frenðes, or els stirred ther vnto, by some peruerse rumors) came with force vnto the gates, and filled with multitude of people, þ wave

A. L. whiche

## The historie of Herodian

which goeth into the Capitoll. And ther hausing Clubbes, & Stones in their handes, labored to interrupte the thinges that were cocluded in the Capytoll, refusyng chiefly Marimus: alledging that he was more sevare, then the symple Commons could well bera w<sup>t</sup>. Wherefore, thei were mosse of all offended wyth hym: cryenge, and threateninge, that thei woulde stea them bothe, for his sake. For thei required a Prince of Gordianus kynred, that in that samyle, and name, Thimperiall Dominion myght contine. Then Abbinus, and Maximus, beyng garded wyth all the youthe of the order of knighthode, and the men of Armes of the Cytie, wearing swordes, attempted to go furth of the Capitole. But thei were dyuen backe, w<sup>t</sup> Clubbes, and Stones, vntyl that through the inuestigacion of some one man, thei beguyled the people after this sorte.

**Gordianus an Infant.**  
Her was a little infat, þ Son of Gordian<sup>d</sup> daughter, whiche was named after hys Grandefathers name. The same, thei commannded certayne, whome thei sent furth, to fetche vnto them, who findinge hym playeng at home, did put hym vpon their shoulders, & carped hym thrughe the myddes of the people, declaringe that he was Gordianus nene we, and callynge hym by name, vntyll thei had brought hym into Capitol, the people makinge ioyfull acclamacions, and browing bowes before hym. And after that the Senate had prounounced him Emperour, seing he could not gouerne Thempyre, because of his tender infancie, the yre of the people was asswaged, and thei suffered the olde Emperours to enter into Thimperiall Pallacie. But ther happened at that tyme, a pestiferous Calamite vnto the Cytie of Rome, throughte the rash boldenes of two Senatours. For when as the Senate was assembled, about certaine Publicke assayres, two of Marimus Souldiours, whiche were departed from the Campe, bothe of mydle age came vnto the Coorte gate, to herken, and spy, what was done, or deternyued, byng withoute weapons. And sauing only they<sup>r</sup> Jackes, and their Clokes therby<sup>r</sup>, they

## The seventh booke

Fol. lxxvi.

thes stodes togyther, amonges the reste of the people. But whyles all other stode at the doore, two or threes at the mooste beyng more desirouse to heare what was sayde, then the reste, entred into the Coorte, and passed a lytle further, then the Aultare of Victoria. Therwithall, a Senato<sup>r</sup>, whiche a lytle before had ben Counsull, named Gallicanus, a Cartaginese borne, and an other whyche had bene Pretor, named Decen<sup>r</sup> Gallicanus, so deinly ( when thei looked for no sache chancie, canas, and had they<sup>r</sup> handes styll vnder their Clokes ) with Decenas their daggers stabbeth the Souldiours to þ hertes. For all the Senate, because of the late iedicion, dyo weare Souldi<sup>r</sup> they<sup>r</sup> weapones, some openly, some pryuely, to defende o<sup>r</sup>s hant their boddes wall, frō the trechery of they<sup>r</sup> enemyses. in the **L** The Souldiours beyng thus murdered, when they ple. were not able, so sodeinlye, to defende them selues) laye prostrat before the Aultare. With which syght, the other beyng dismayed, throughte the murder of they<sup>r</sup> Companios, and fearynge the flockynge togyther of the people, because them selues were wythout weapons, furthwyth they fledde awaie.

**The A** Then Gallycanus lepte hastely ouute of the Coorte into the myddes of the people, and there shewing hys daceice of sworde, and his hande, stylling with bloode, exhorted them, to purue, and lea the enemyses of the Romaine people, and Senate, and the frendes, and Compagnions of Marimus. Wherid all the people beinge prouoked, receaued Gallycan w<sup>t</sup> ioyfull thoutes, and pursued the Souldiours with stones, as farre as thei well myght. And the Souldiours, hauing gotten into their Campe, a fewe of the beyng wounded, and hurt, thei harneised them selues, & defended their Trenche. But Gallicanus ( seyng he had already set vpon sache a myschiese ) rayled vp a ciuple, and very perniciose battaie. For after he hadde commannded all the Armoyses to be broken vp ( in the whyche were kepte weapons, rather of pompe, then of warre ) where w<sup>t</sup> every man myghte arme hym selfe, accordynglye. And hauing opened the Swordsplayars Halles, caused every man to arme himself w<sup>t</sup> his own harnessse.

A a. g.

And

The historie of Herodian

And taking out of the houses, and shoppes in the Cyrie, what so euer weapon was within them, cyther sworde, speare, dagger, or arre, when as surye & anger had made all thing y come to hande a weapon, sur: h with thei went in plumpes, withoute ordre, vnto the Campe, and, as yf thei shuld assaulte a Citie, thei besieged the walles, and gates of the Campe. But the Souldours within, beyng expert in syghting, defended them selues with the battailementes of their walles, and their Targettes, repulysing the common people, with often shotte of arrowes, and their lōge speares. Finally, when y people determined to returne into the Citie, because thei were weryed, and the moste parte of the Sworde plaiers soze wounded, beyng verye neare nyghe, the Souldours, perceauynge the recheiße regarde of the people in departinge (for the Romaines thoughte not, that the Souldours durste syghte with them, hande to hande, or being so fewe in number, to enter oute of their fortresse, to syght with so great a multitude) sodeinly settinge open their gates, made a strange, and forcible inuasion against that dysorderd heape of people. In that conflicte were all the Sworde players slayne, and a greate number of the people, thrusse to death in the presse. Which ones randed, the Souldours returned to their Campe, because it was not farre of. Herevpon, there rose moze behenit indignacion amonges the Senatours, and people of Rome. Wherefore thei chose for their Capitaines, euery noble, & valyaunt man, throughout all Italye, and leuengen all the youthe togyther, arwed them with such weapons, as in that sorteine tumult, thei could get. The chiefeſt, and Strongest parte dyd Maximus, leade to fight against Maximinus, the rest remained for the custody, and defēce, of the Citie. In the meane whyle, there were daylye skirmyſhes, and assaultes, at the walles of the fortresse, but to no purpoſe, nor proffyte, the Souldours, defending them selues from above, and driving away thame fullye, the common people, whyche they strake, and wounded.

Albinus

The seventh boke.

Fol. lxxvii.

Albinus, whyche remayned at home, required the people by proclamation, to take truce, and become frendes, wylle the Souldours, vnto whom he promyſed also perdone of all they had committēd. But he coulde induce neyther partye therewith. The mischiefe encreasing dayly, more & moze. For the people disdayned, that so great a multytude, should be had in contempte of so small a number. On the other syde, the Souldours greuously grudged, that they should suffer that of the Romaynes, whyche they never loshed for of the Barbarous nacions.

Finallye, when the assaultes proceeded not, as the people woulde haue it, it seemed good to their Capitaines, to turne away, al the Riuers, & waters, which came by Cundittes into the Campes, that the Souldours myght be afflicted wyth wante of water, and wyth thyrſte. Wherefore, in makynge of Trenches and cuttyng the Cundyt Pypes, they tourned away all the streames of water from the Fortresse. But the Souldours, perceauynge the peryll imminent, and dryken wyth desperation, opened their gates, and runnyng vpon the mulcitude, whiche ranne away, pursued theym vnto the verye Gates of the Cyrie.

Then the Common people, beyng Inferior, and not able to sustayne thys cruell conflict, gat them into thei houses, and from thence, vered the Souldours, who durſte not enter into the houles to theym unknownen. Wherefore, they leyng the houses, & shoppes shutte, castte fyre to the doores and pozches, whiſe stoođ out towardes the streate, wherof there are verye manye in Rome. Whereby it came to passe, that partie through the farre distaunce of the houses, and tye of partie through the tymber buyltynge, a great parte of the Citye was burned, and many men of ryche substance, sodeynlye became poore: hauyng loste notable possessyons, eyther welthye, throughe the reuenewes therof, or elles of great estimation throughe the beauty of the same. Neither was there a ſinal number of men destroyed. For that theyz portalles and doores beinge

A.iii.

## The historie of Herodian

beynge on fyre, they had no waye to escape furthe  
of the houses. The substance, and goodes, of ryche  
men, was ransacked, the Souldours geuyng theyz  
whole myndes to spoyle, and robberye, and neadye  
Beggars of the Cytye, mynglyng theym selues a-  
monges them.

But the rage of the fyre so wandered, that it bur-  
ned and consumed more houses, then some greate Cy-  
tye hathe in compasse of buyldynge. Duryng the  
tyne that thys calamytte was done at Rome, Mar-  
tinus, makyng haste in hys iourneye, was come  
vnto the borders of Itale. And hauyng sacri-  
ficed vpon the Aultars, whiche were there erected,  
he contynued on hys voyage, comanddynge the  
Souldours to kepe on theyz Marueste, and mar-  
che in order of Battayle. But seyng we haue  
made mencion alreadye, of the reuslte of Afric-  
ke, the Ciuyll warre at Rome, and the actes  
by Mariminus, wþt hys iourney hy-  
therunto, we wyll declare the  
reste hereafter.

## The eande of the se- uenth Booke.

The

## C The Argumente of the eighth Booke of Herodian.



¶ the beginnyng of the egypt, and laste booke, is shewed, how, and in what oder, Mariminus came vnto the Conynnes, and boundes of Itale, by the Al-  
pes, as farre as the Cytye of Aquileia, where he founde resi-  
stence. After that is described the scituacion of that Citye, the  
preparation for the warre, the assualtes made by  
Mariminus armie, & the stoute resystance of the  
Aquilevens. Consequentye, howe Mariminus  
was slayne, and what ioye was made therefore.  
And how Albinus(which the aucthour in the for-  
mer booke called Balbinus) & Marimus, after they  
had a litle space, resigned in great traquilitie, were  
slayne by the men at armes. After whome, Gordianus  
beyngc. xiiii. yeares of age, enjoyed the Em-  
pyre alone.

Aa.iii.

The



Chane in the lass booke recyed, what Maximinus did, after the death of Gordia, his tornaynts Italie, wyrth the sedicion, and reuolte, of the people, and Houldiours, within the Cypre selfe of ROME. When Maximinus was arryued in the confynes of Italpe, he lente certayne Scowzers before, to espye, whether there were any stale, or embushmentes, lying in the bottom of the Alpes, and the thicke woodes there: And led the Armye, into the playne, commaundynge the men of Armes, to march forward, in a square orde, to thende that a great parte of the syeldes, myght be couered with them. And having brought all impedimentes, and Cariage, into the myddes, him selfe followed, with the Ycomie of his Garde, to rescue them, if they were distressed. On eynther syde, the wynges were of me of Armes, on Barbed Horses, with Pauritanian, Slynghers, Archers of the oriental Regias; and hoxlemen of Cernitanye, whome he had waged, for the increas of his ayde. And he was accustomed, to set them in the foyre fronte of the battayle, against his enemys, because thei shoulde sustayne, and receaue the fyre brunte, beynge boulde, and stronge me. And (ysk neade so required, he had rather, those Barbarous, & rude people, were losse, than any other of his owne Houldiours.

After thei had passed the plaines, obserning theyr due order in marchinge; they came to a cyte of Italpe, named of the inhabitauntes Cumona. The same Cumona is sypuate in a lowe playne, at the foote of the Alpes.

There, the Secouers reported unto Maximinus, that the Towne was bōide, and forsaken of the inhabitauntes, who were all fledde, the gates of the Cyples, and the houses, consumed wyrth fyre, and all thynges,

B. b. j.

whiche

## The Historie of Herodian

whiche was in the Towne, or fielde, carped awaye, or burnte, no foode remayninge, eyther for man, or beaste.

Wherwith Maximinus was veri glad: for he thought, that other people, wold doo semblably, through feare of him. But contrarywyse, the Souldours murmurred, and grudged, that they shold in the very begynning, be vexed w famine. And when thei had passed ouer the nyghte, some of them, in the open, and comen houses, other some, in the playne syelde, immediately after the Sonne rysing, they came vnto the Alpes.

**The gretteries of Italie,** These be wonderfull longe Wylles, compassyng the Alpes to pearce the cloudes, so long also, that thei seame Italpe, touching, on the lefte hande, the Lirrenian, and on the right syde, the Ionian Seas: beyng full of thondē t brode, and thicke forestes, with very narowe pathes, The Ionian Seas ben Rockes, and stopenes of the highe banckes: haing notwithstanding many narowe passages, made with laboure of hande, by the aunciente Italions. Wherefore, a meruelous feare entred into the Souldours hartes, to passe that waye: dreading, þ the hyll toppe: was already taken by their enemies, and all the straites stopped, to forbid them passage. Neither did theyz feare seame sondē, to them that behelde the nature of the place.

After thei had passed the Alpes, and were descended into their Campe, thei began to rejoyce, and bāquet, together. And Maximinus then conceiued a sure trust, that all hys affayres, shall haue prosperous successe: seying that the Italians, trusted not vnto the difficultie of the places, wherein, them selues were wonte to larkē, and prouide for their safety, and where, they might lye in wayte for their enemies, and fightyng frō aboue, easely distresse thei. When thei were entred into þ playne, þ Scourers brought word, þ Aquileia the greatest Cite of Italpe, had shut their gates, and that the Pannonia bādes, which went before, had veri fiersely assayled the walles, yet not withstandyng, theyz

## The viii. booke.

Fol.lxxxix.

theyz osten attemptes were all in bayne. Whereloze, beyng werled, they were constrainyd to departe, a great number, of Stones, Spear es, and Arowes, hauing herte them, from the toppe of the walles.

Then Maximinus, being ver y angry with the Pannonianis, as thonghe thei had not foughte valeantlye ynough, made haste thitherwardes: truffinge, with out any more labour, to wyn the Cite.

But Aquileia, as it is a myghty Towne, was abūdā The scetely enhabited of people. And as it were the Marts tuaciō of Towne of Italy, & the territorie of Illiria, it did frō Aquileia the mayne lande, minstre, to those that layled in the Seas, plenty of all suchs necessaries, as was brought thither by the Kyuers, and the lande: And from the Sea, vnto the mayne lande, thinges very necessarye for the hygher Countreys, whych throughe the bytternes of wynter, were nothyng fertyll. But chyfely it mynistrē Wynes, wherewyth that Regyon abounded, vnto the nighe Countreyes, that hadde no bygne trees at all. The whyche caused, that besydes the greate number of Cytezins, there repayzed vnto that Cyte, very many Straungers, and Marchauntes also. And Certeis, the multitude was at this tymē muche more augmented, by the assembly of Countrey people, who hauynge forsaken theyz owne small Droupes, and Uylages, dyd truste them selues, vnto the greatenes of this Cyte. The olde wall, whereof, was a greate parte fallen downe. For, whyles the Romaynes floryshed in Dominion, the Cytes of Italpe, neaded neyther wall, nor weapon, lyngyng in quyer tranquillytie, and beynge associatēd in the rule of Thempyre wch them. But nowe, necessitē compellyng them, they huryl The prebed vp theyz walles agayne, wþh Towres, Wal paracion werkes, and Rāpiers: and hauynge fortlysyed their of the A-Cyte wþhin fursh, and shutte theyz Gates, stode quylcys all togyther, bothe daye, and nyghte vpon the for the de walles, valcauntely dryuyngs backe theyz cueſence of their Cite.

W.b.g.

Theyz Cite,

## The Historie of Herodian

Crispi-  
nus He-  
nephilus

Their Capitaines of chiefeſt power, were two men which had bene Consulles, chosen by the Senate, named Crispinus, and Henephilus. Thiese procured vnuche diligence, all thynges necessary, to be brought before hande into the Cittie, to thende thei myghte the longer tyme sustaine the ſiege. Ther was in þ Towne great abundance of water, throughte the great number of welles, the Riuere whiche ran a longe by the walles, and the dyches, betwene them, and their enemys.

Thiese thynges being thus ordred within the Cittie, when Maximinus hearde, that thei defended their walles stontly, and had shut their gates againſt hym, he refolued to ſende, vnder color of Ambaſſade, ſome which ſhould ſpeak unto them, and (yf it were poſſible) perſuade them, to open the gates of the Cittie vnto hym.

He had then in hys Armye, a certayne Magistrate of Aquileia, whose wyfe, childre, and househould, were enclosed within the Cittie. This man therfore, with a certaine Capitaines, he ſente as oratores vnto theym: truſting, that the Citezyns wold eaſely obey his auſhoritie. When thei approched nigh the walles, they ſpake vnto the people on this wyſe, and ſayed. That their Commune Emperor comandded them, laying al armes a part, to obſerue peace, to receave him as their frende, and not as theyr enemys, and to eccupye them ſelues in prayers, and ſacrificeng to theyr Goddes, rather then in deſyze to murder. To take compassion of their native Countrey, ſhortly (yf thei perſisted in their obſtinacie) lyke to come to bitter ruine, & decay. That thei might, yf thei would, with on deede, ſauie them ſelues, & their Country. For thei ſaid, that their good Emperor, wold forget, and forgiue, all offences, ther before commytted, ſeynge that it was not their transgrefſion, but the peruerſe fault of other men. Such wordes did the Ambaſſadores ſpeke vnder the wall, vvh ſo loude boyce, that thei myghte eaſely be harde, althoſh, nat of all the people, yet of as many, as ſtoode vpon the walles, and Towres.

Fo:

## The . viii. booke.

Fo. 61

For they dyd wythſylence, ~~and~~ attētivelye geue eare vnto that the Ambaſſadours ſpake. But Crispinus, fearing, leſt through thole allurementes, they woulde be perſuaded, to take peace for warre, and open theyr gates vnto theyr enemys (as the common people are euer wauerynge and vncouſtaunte) ranne from one wall to another, earneſtly deſyzyng, and inſtauntlys beſechyng them to perſeuer valiantly, and reſide manfully, and not to violote theyr faythe, and allegiance, towardes the Senate, and the people of Rome, nor yet neglecte the Title, and Fame of Italy, ſo long tyme preſerued from the invaſions of forreyne enemys, nor geue credit, vnto a false, perfured, and trayterous Tyrant, nor beynge allured wyth gentle ſayned talke, runne headlonge vnto theyr owne manifest deſtructiſ. But truſt to the ſortune of þ warre, whiche moſt coomonly is ſo vncertayne, that ſometimeſ a greate huge hoſſe, are of a ſmall number diſcomfited: and thole, whiche ſeame the mightier, are by theym whiche are comp̄ted the weaker, diuers tymeſ vanquished. Neþher that they ſhould feare the greatneſſe of hys armye. For (quod he) they that fyghte in another mannes quarell, when they ſee, that the good happe of the victoře ſhall departe to another, doo but ſayntlye endure the Battayle: perceauyng them ſelues onely to be pertakers of the peryll, and the verye profyt of the victoře, to remayne vnto another man. But they whiche fyghte for their countrey, beſydes that they ought to be of better hope (for they conteſde to take nothyng of others, but to defende theyr owne) are also of a greater ſtomacke, as thole whome no deſyze of dominion, but euerye mans owne neceſſtie, compelleth to fyghte, because the commoditye of the victoře, is chyefelye due vnto them.

Crispinus ſpeaking those wordes, nowe vnto euerye man particulerlye, and then to all generalllye, beynge a man of hys owne diſpoſition honourable, and florishing in the Romayne eloquence, beſydes that, gratefull to euerye man, for hys meke gouernance, did eaſily ſtabliſhe the hartes of þ people to continue in

Wb. iii. their

## The historie of Herodian

South,  
sayers.  
  
Weles.

their dutay and allegiaunce. Wherfore he commaundes the Ambassadours to departe to Maximinus againe, Wythout anye thyng concluded. It was reported, that Crispinus was hartened to abide the fortune of þ batayle, by the answere of the Southsayers, whiche reported, that the inwards of the beastes, betokened luke kyne successe of his affaires. And in deade, the Italians bled to geue much credit to þ superstition. There wer spred abrode besydes the Oracle of a certayne Idole in that countrey, whiche promised victorye. The inhabitauntes there cal the same Idole Weles, and do with great reverence worshyppe it, interpreting him to be Apollo. Whose Image, certaine of Maximinus owne Souldours, assyrméd that they sawe in the ayre signifying for the Cittie. Which thing, whether many beleued it for a truthe, or whether the fable pleased th̄, to mitigate thereby the infamy of so great an army because thei were unequal in battayle, to so small a number of Cptayns, not exercised in the warres (that it might seeme they were ouercome rather by þ Goddes then men) I am not very certayn. But the straungenes of the matter, made it leame more credibile.

Afer the Ambassadours were retourned wout any resolute conclusion, Maximinus being syzed w̄ much more fury, made greater hast then he dyd before. But when he came vnto the Ryuer, whyche runneth xii. miles of from the Cptayne, he found it of a very depe and broade Channell. For in that seazon of the yeare, the Hōlōwe (whiche the longe wynter before, caused to endure) beynge molten vpon the next hylles, had made so great a floude, that the Arme could not passe ouer it, by anye meanes. For the Aquiliani had broken, and carayed away the Bridge, whiche was a goodly and sumptuous pece of worke, buylded by the auncyent Emperours, of square ston, with many small pillars standing one by another vpon the same. Wherfore when th̄ armie coulde passe ouer, neyther by Bridge, nor bellell (for ther was none nigh hand) he stote styl in a dumpe, rausyng what to do. But certayne Germapnes, being ignorant, wþt what swyfnes, and violence

## The . viii . booke.

Fo.ci

violence, the Ryuers of Itale did runne, & supposing that they course was gentle, and slow over the fields, as the Riuers in they Countrey (which for that they haue no swift streame, are easly congeled ouer wþt Isle) aduentured them selues, & their horses that were perfect in swimming, into the middes of the Chanell: where, throughe vpolence of the Streame, they were drowned. After Maximinus had lyen styll in Campe, ii. or iii. dayes, he cast a depe trenche aboue the same, that no euemies shoulde sodeynly set vpon them, & remayned vpon that side of the River, consulting howe he myght make a Brɪdge to passe ouer. Whyles he so abode very pensife, because there was no tymbre, nor Boates with the whiche ioyned together, he myghte make a Brɪdge, certayne Carpenteres declared vnto hym, that in the Villages rounde aboue, forsaken of the Inhabitauntes, there were many round Tubbles and Hoggesheades, wherin the people were wonte to carye wyne: the which being rounde like shypes, þf they were bounde together, in maner of small Boates, would easly carye them ouer. For being fastened together, covered with Oziars, or Twigges, & well balessed with earth, they would never be drowned. When þ was finisched, þ soldiours easlye passed ouer to thother shore. And there, having burned al þ villages whiche they founde abandoned of thinhabitauntes, did cut down all þ vines, & trees, wherby they greatly defaced þ beauty of þ region. For all the countrey seemed to be compassed aboue, in maner of a Theater, w̄ trees set in due order, & bynes ioyned together, lyfted vp in height like vnto a Scaffold. Al which being plucked by þ rootes, charmie approched nigh vnto þ citie. Neuertheles because they were all wery, Theperour would not þ they shoulde furthw begyn þ assault. But having encaped, more then an arrowes shooote fr̄ the Citie, devideid th̄ into hundreds, appoynted the oder of their marching like vnto a wedge, smal before, and broade behinde, & limiting to every Company, a part of the wall, to scale, and batter, he gaue them lycence to recreate them selues, for one daye.

Thac

## The historie of Herodian

That pasted, he began to geue the assault, and having moued to the wall, all sortes of engyns, when no kynd of Batterie was omitted, there was almost every day cruell skyrmishes fought. For the Souldours enuironed the walles, as it were with a toyle, or nette, and fought with mucche stoutnes of stomacke. And on the contrarie parte, the Aquileiens resisted verye baillantlye: who hanynghe shute the dores of their temples, and house s, dyd all together, wþt theyz wyues, and Children, vpon the walles, Towers, and Battlements, defende theyz Cytye. Neþher was there any age, whiche refused to syghte for their Countrey.

Maximinus then pulled downe al the Suburbes, and whatsoeuer buyldynge was without the Cytye, wþt the tymber wherof, he made all kynde of engyns, and instrumentes, wherwith he might batter the walles, or at least wylle, some part therof, whereby the armys myght enter into þ Cytye, and in spoþyng, sackyng, and defacynge, the same, leaue it desolate, and boþde of habitation. For he thoughte it þ woulde be against his honour, to go vnto Rome, before he had destroyed the Cytye, which syrþ resold him in Italy.

Wherfore, he rode wþt hys Sonne, whome he had iornd vnto hym in the Empyre, amonges the Souldours, premysing them many good morawes, and exhortynghe them, to stande lyke menne to theyz tacklyng.

But the Cyteyns of Aquileia, threw downe great stones vpon them. And having sylded verye many Ladels with Brimstone, Lyne, and Pitche, as soone as the Souldours began to scale the walles, they powred downe þ same so fadie, that it seemede violene thowres. Wher þ Pitche & baggage, fell vpo þ naked partes of þ souldeours bodies, thei threw fro thei brigaders, & the rest of their harnessse, vpon weyng very boate, and their tumber engyns being set on fyre. Then a man myghte see the Souldours, thowe away their owne harnessse. Which thing, haþg a colour, that thei were dispoyled by the vanquishers, was invented, rather by the knytte of arte, then force of batayle. Wherby it happened

A sore re-  
buke.

## The viii. booke

Fel. c. 5.

happened, that many of the Souldours, eyther losse theyz syghte, or elles had their faces, and other bare partes of their bodies, burned. The Aquileyes threw downe also, into their Towres, & engins of wood, many torches staves, couered wþt Rose, and pitch, whose endes, were sharpened, with heade s, lyke batailes: whyche being kindled, and sticke d fadie in to the Timber wþk, dyd easly set all on fyre. That notwithstanding, the syrþste daies, the fortune was eþ quall on eyther syde. But anon after, the courage of Maximinus armys dyd alwage, and because theyz hope was frust rate, and had deceiued the, thei wered every day moþe peleise then other. For those, who thei before supposed, wold not abyd the brunt first of theyz force, thei nowe perceiued, not onely, not to shrinke, but also, to resistre valeantly. Contrariwyse, the stomaches of the Aquilenses, were daylye, more, and more exhausted. And hauyng, thogh vse, obtayned, boþe the ryperte feate of syghtinge, and therwithal manfull corage, thei so despysed the Souldours, that thei mocked them, wþt iestynge at Maximinus, when he came nigh vnto the walles, and blustering sute, many opprobrious tautes against him, and his Sonne. Wherewith he being chaufed, when he could not auenge him selfe vpon hys enemys, he put to cruel death, many of his own Capitaines: alleging, þ thei had nor like valeaunte men, and true subiectes, done their full endeour, in the assaultinge of the Citye. Wherby it came to passe, that the Souldours became more angry towardes hym: And his enemys, had him in more contempt, and derision. It chaufed besydes, that the Aquileys abosideth with plenty of vitayle, and all other necessaries. For what so ever was expedient, to the sustenaunce of men, and horses, the same was before hande brought into the Citye. On other syde, the armys languished with penury of foode. And after all the trees were cut downe, and the fieldes wasted, some of the Souldours lay in Cabbens, such as thei could for hastie make, and other som in the open feldes, subiect to the heate of the Sonne,

C. i. and

## The historie of Herodian

and the weatenes of theayne. Neþher was there any kynde of noþyment, broughte vnto them, for them selues, or their cattell. For all the wayes, and passages, were by the diligence of the Romaines, shut vp with greate walles, and Gates. The Senate also, had sente certayne Senatours, with a compaþie of armed personnes, chosen out of all Itale, to defende the Shores, and Havenys, geuing no man licence to sayle. So that all thinges done at Rome, were kept close, from the eares of Marimine. All the highe wayes besydes, and Bypathes, were diligently watched, that no man shoulde passe by them. So it came to passe, that the Armye, whiche besieged the Towne, was it selfe also enclosed ronide aboue. For thei coulde neþher take Aquileia, nor passe forward towards Rome, throngh wante of shypes, and wagons, whiche were all before hande taken vp by the Romaines. The rumor also throughe suspicion augmented, that all the Romayne people, were already in Armes, and that Italy, with all the Ilyrian, and Barbarous naciōs, whiche enhabyte the Easte, and Southe Countreys, had wþch one consent, conspyred, to ioyne together, against Mariminus, for the despÿte, and grudge, they bare vnto hym. Wherefore, the Souldiours fell into dispayze of good hope, beþng afflicted, wþth scarceteþ of all thinges, and haþing no water, but such, as thei diew out of y Kyuer, which was defiled with bloode, and deade Carcasses. For the Aquilevens, threwe into the Kyuer, such deade bodies, as thei coulde not bury. And thole whiche perished with sworde, or sicknes, in the Campe, were throwen into the Kyuer lykewylse. Amonges whome, there were many, whiche died by famin, haþing when thei were drowned, some breath remaynyng.

Whyles the Army aboade thus sorrowfull, boyde of all succoure, sodeinly, when Mariminus restes in his Pavillion, one daye vacant from batayle, and all the Souldiours, were gone to reste theim selues, in theyr Cabans, and Tentes, the men at Armes, which had theyr Statouns, within the Citye of Rome, vnder the

## The .viii. booke

Fol. clx.

the Hyll Alban, and therin, their woues, & chldren, cōsulted, and agreed, to lea Marimine: that thei might be ones exempt, from that longe, & inexplicable syge of the Cytie, and mouning of warre against Italy, for the loue of a Tyrant, who was abhorred of all men.

Wherefore, taking cozage vnto them, about noneþyde, thei wente to his Pavillion, the yeomen of his Garde, cōspiring together with them. And there, after thei hadde pulled downe his Images, thei slew hym, and his Sonne, when they came furþe, to speke vnto the Souldiours: and with them, the lord great Maister of his house, and all his bearest frendes. And then threw their bodies furþ wþ despite, leuyng minis þ them, to be devoured of Dogges, and Wyrdes: seding his Son, onely the two Emperours heades vnto Rome. This eande of lyfe, had Mariminus, with his Son, both receyving condigne punishment, of their þylls dered gouernaunce. At the first tidinges, of the two Princes death, the Army stode styll, amased, & vncertayne what thei might doo. For it was not equally acceptable vnto them all, especially not vnto the Panionians, and Barbarous Thracians, who hadde depurued the Empyre, vnto Mariminus. But when they perceived that the deade coulde not be vndone, they helde them selues contented alþoughþe vnwillingly, and surned to reioyce with the resse. Then, layeng a syde their weapons, thei went to the walles of Aquileye, lyke peaceable me, and ther declaring the death of Marimine, desyred that the Gates might be set oþe vnto them, bryng nowe of their mortall enemys, become their louing frendes. But the Capitaynes of Aquileia, would not permitt it, but shewed furþ vpon the walles, the Images of Marimus, Albinus, and Gordian, Emperours, crowned with Garlandes of Lawrell. Unto the which Images, them selues syþte making joyful acclamacions, exorted the Army also, to acknowledge, and reverence them, whome the Senate, and people of Rome, hadde chosen to be Emperours.

For, said thei, the other Gordians before pasted, are amonges

C. c. y.      monges

## The historie of Herodian

monges the Goddes. They did set furth also upon the walles, a market of all necessaries, with greate abundance of meate, wyne, garmetes, and ali other thinges, whiche that riche, and florishing Cytie, could minister vnto them. That thing, did meruelously abash the Souldours: who percevued, that the Citezins, had storr yngouge of vitayll, to abyde a farre longer seage. And on the other side, hem selues, being afflictes with wante of foode, shold rather haue all perysched, than conquerid that Cittie, abounding wyth all thinges expedient for mans relif. Whyles the Souldours thus aboade vnder the walles, and tooke such thinges, as their necessarie required, in compayne of the Citezins, their countenaunce was of peace, and frendship, a forme of siege, as yet remaining, for that the Romayne Souldours, laye abouthe the walles whiche were enclosed, and shut. In the meane while, that theise thinges were in doing at Aquileya, y horsemen, which caried the Emperours heades to Rome, making great haste, with sped diligence, were received into every Cittie, and Town, with the gates opē, and the multitude of Citezins, and enhabitauntes, brynging Lawrell in their handes. And then having passed y Marishes, & Lakes, whiche are betwene Albinum, tinum, & Rauenna, ther founde Marimus in Rauenna, leuieng, & waging Souldours out of the Cittie, Parium<sup>2</sup>, and Italy, and calling a great number of Germains vnto his ayde, the whiche were sent him, by the comon people of Germany, whō he before in his Proconsulship amonges them, had prudently gouerned.

Whiles he wae thus mustering his power against Marimius, y horsemē arriuued ther lodeli, bringing w the h Princes heades, & declared y victory, w the prosperouse successe of their affaires, & y good wil, & cōfet, of y people, & Army, to y obediece of thole Emperors, whō y Senate had elected. Whē thise thiges were so sodely w out expectaciō reported, furthw, the people ren vnto the Aulters to sacrifice, every man singyng, and recysyng at the victory, whiche wythoute any troublome blynes, they had obtayned.

Then

## The viii. boke.

Fel. c.iii.

Then Marimus after the sacryfycē earded, dismisseth, the horsemē to Romē, to carry thither, the sayd heades, and declare the whole circumstance, vnto the people. Whēn they were arriued at the Cytie, and hauyng parre the heades vpon twoo Speares, caried the same throughe y freates, to be seane of the people, no tonge can tell, the ioye, and myrth was there that daye. For there was no person, eyther yonge, or olde, but ranne vnto the Temples, and Aulters.

No man abode within hys owne house, but ranne lyke madde men, shoutynge, and reiolsyng one with another, and gatherynge theym selues together, in a circle, as thoughe some manne woulde make an Oration vnto them. Albinus hym selfe offered an hundredth beastes, and all the Magistrates, reiolyed abous measure, as though they had escaped yare, whych before henge ouer theyr neckes. Purseuautes, & Postes, were sente belydes, wyth Laurell in theyr handes, to beare those newes vnto all the Prouinces.

Whyle thys so great ioye, and myrthe, continued amonges the Romaynes, Marimus remoued frō Rauenna, and went vnto Aquileia: hauyng passed al the Maryshes, in the whyche the Ruer Eridanus, and the nyghe Lakes, doth overflowe, so that they runne into the Sea, by. vii. armes, and therefore, the nyghe enhabitauntes, cal the same Lake, in theyr tonge. vii. Seas. Furthwith the Aquileiens opened their gates, and receaved Marimus. And verye manye Cyties of Italye, sente theyr chiese Magistrates, as Ambassadores vnto him, clothed in white garmetes, & crowned wyth Laurell, bringinge with theym, the Images of theyr Countrey Goddes, and Crownes of Golde, yf there were any, amonges their chieffest Jewels: wher withall, they gratified Marimus, and strowed bowes to him in his passage. The armye which had besieged Aquileia, mette hym also, in peaceable apparell, wyth Laurell in their handes: but not with so trewe and loyng a section, as with a sayned good wyll, and reuerence, for the tymē onelye, applyed vnto the present estate, of the Prince. Yea, many of them morued priuely, that

## The historie of Herodian

Iye, that he whom they had chosen was slayne: & thos whiche the Senate had created, possessed the Princepalte.

After Marcius had spente the first, & second dawe, in offering of sacrifice, the thyrd day he assembled al his armes, together in the playne, & there sitting in his tri-bunal seate, made thys Dration vnto them.

Howe profitable your penitence, and fauour reconciled wyth the Romayne people, hath been vnto you, your selues haue by experiance throughlye learned, in acceptyng peace for warre, and obseruyng the stile of true warriours, which is one the most holy, & sacred, mysterie of the Romaine Emperye. Wherfore, you ought hereafter, to enioye the same cōmoditie, in gardynge your loyaltye, and faythe, towardes the people, and Senate of Rome, & to vs your Emperours, who, through our nobilitie, bothe of byrth, & in acces done, as it were by certayne degrees ascended, the Senate, and people of Rome, haue elected. Neyther is the possession of principaltie peculiār vnto one man, but of olde antiquitie, common vnto all the Romayn people. For in the Cytye selfe, is establyshed the Fortune or administration of the same. If you wyl therfore, retaine vs, and geue due honour, and reuerence, vnto your Princes, ye shall not onely obtaine vnto your selues a blessed lyfe, flowing, and abounding with all goodnes, but also all Nacions, and Cytyes, lyuyng in este, wyl conctynewe in theyr duetye of allegaunce. We shall lyue, as youre owne heartes desyre: euerē man at home in his owne house, not troubled wyth warres in forreyne Countreyes (that beyng oure charge, to see the Barbarous people, remayne in peace, and defende the same) For whyles there are two Emperours, bothe the Cytye, and forreyne affaires, shalbe administrē more easye: one of theym beyng alwayes readye, to go wherē necessity shall call hym. Neyther neade ye to doubtē, that any memo-rye shall remayne, of that is tofore done, eyther in vs, for

## The viii. boke.

(for whatsoever ye dyd, was by commaundement) or in the Romayne people; or elles in anye other Nacion, whiche for iniurie done vnto theym, haue rebelled. Let all be forgotten, let there be a perfecte bonde of constante frendshyppe, and a perpetuall faythe of loue, and modestie.

After Maximus had spoken these wordes, and promyed to diſtribute muche moneyp amonges theym, he sojourned a lyle whyle at Aquilia, and then determined to retourne to Rome.

Wherfore, hauing dismissed the rest the Armie into the Provinces, and theyr owne Stations, him selfe retourned to Rome, wych the Peomen of his Garde, (who hauyng the chyefest charge of the Emperours personne, were chosen by Albynus) and manye Germaynes his frendes, in whome he had mosse affiance, as in those, whome before he was Emperour, he had gouerned. When he entered into the Cytye, Albinus mette hym, wyth yonge Gordian in his companye. The Senate, and all the people receyued them wyth Joyful Cries, & Shoutes, as if they triumphed.

But notwithstanding that the Empire were gouerned bothe openly and priuily, with muche modest grauitie, euerē man spake well of it, and all the people were gladde wyth the Princes, for that they were noble men borne, & worthye Thempyre, yet the sytiful, and crabbed stomaches of the Praetorian Souldours, could not wel abide, to heare thole ioyfull prayses of the people, but grudged, & murmed agaynst that nobilitie: beynge sore greued, that the Princes were created by the Senate. Theyr grudge was augmented, by reason of the Germaynes, whome Marcius retayned wyth hym in the Cytye.

For they thoughte, that the Germaynes woulde worke theym myschiese, ys they attempted any great enterprize.

They feared also treason, lest perhaps they shoulde be put out of seruice, for their sakes: beinge mindfull of Generis the Emperour, who discharged fro theyr lyuynges, all the Slears of Pertynar.

Wherfore

## The historie of Herodian

Wherfore, one daye, when playes were celebrated in the Capitole, and mens mindes addicte unto reuels, and pastyme, soodeynly the Souldours did manifestly shewe furthe, theyz longe dissimuled rancour. For beinge enflamed with yns, they ranne all together, in a franticke moode, vnto Thempervall Palayce: requiringe the two olde Emperours to deathe.

It happened then (as the Diuell woulde haue it) that them selues agreed not very wel togetheres. But, as the desyre to raygne, is unsaciable, and the power of gouernaunce indiuisible) eyther of theym, coueyted to be the chiese Ruler. For Albinus was stoncked therunto, wyth the nobilitie of hys byrthe, and hys twyse beyng Consull. And Marimus was encouaged, with hys Gouernaunce of the Citie, and because he was the more skylfull in all assayzes. But in deade, theyz bothe dignities of Senatours, and theyz suffici-ent nobilitie of byrthe, dyd prycke them bothe forwar-des, eyther to coueyte the sole Regiment, whiche was the cause of theyz owne destruction.

For when Marimus, hearynge that the Pretorian Souldours were come to fle hym, determined to cal for the ayde of the Germayns, whyche were in the Citie, & seamed able yngouge, to withstande the Pretorians. Albinus, suspecting some deceipte to be for-ged against hym (because he knewe that the Germaynes fauoured Marimus) prophybyted them to be sent for: denyng, that they were called to resytle the Pretorians, but onely to the entent Marimus might obtaine the rule him selfe alone.

Whyles they thus contended wythin them selues, lso, soodeynlye wyth one assente, the Souldours were vpoletlye entered into the Palayce, hanynge beaten downe the Porters. There toke they bothe the olde men, rente the garmentes they had on, beyng in deade symple, for that they abode wythin the doxes) and drewe them bothe naked, out of the palayce, bea-tyng and skornyng thym, as Emperours chosen by theyz Wardes, and eye lyddes, sparynge no parte

## The ,viii, booke.

Fol.cvi.

parte of their body, with all the shame thel coulde de-uyse, thei caried them throughe the myddes of the Ci-tie, vnto their Campe: determining, not to murde them in the Palacie, but rather, to torment them with a flowe kynde of death, that thei might feale the moze payne.

But when thei harde that the Germayns knewe the matter, and were therefore fallen to harness, and comming against them, furthwith, thei put the two Marim<sup>9</sup>, olde men to death, after thei had moste bylaynouslye and Albi-ordered them. And hauing left their bodyes, in the nus slain myddes of the waye, thei lyfted vp yonge Gordianus Gordia- in their Armes (when nothing elles was nere hande) nus sole and proclaymed hym Emperour. And then thei called Empe- often vnto the people, sayinge, that thei hadde slayne tour. Wyth their owne handes, those, whome the people re-lected at the systre: and chosen Gordian, the ne-uewe of that Gordian, whiche the Romayne people, had compelleo to be Emperour.

This yonge Gordian therfore, thei ledde into theyz Campe, shut their Gates, and there abode in quicte. And the Germaynes, hearing that those were slaine, and thrownen oute, for whome them selues made that hast, determined not to fight for them, which were al-ready deade, but returned to Ilines agayne.

This unworthy, and bylawnouse ende of lyse, has the two graue, and modeste, olde men: exalted to the Tyre, & Diademe, of the Empyre, thrugh the nobilite of theyz byrthe, and singuler deserthes. After whome, Gordian beyng almosse .xiiii. yeres olde, and of all the people proclaymed Prince, tooke vpon hym Them- pyre.

The eande of the eyghte,  
and laste Booke of  
Herodian.

M.D.J.

**C** The Annotations in forme of a  
Table after the order of the Alphabette, contay-  
nyng the expositiōn of many woordes, Histo-  
ries, Fables, Iytuacions of places, and des-  
cription of Countreyes, seruyng to  
the more easye understandyng  
of the presente Hysto-  
rye.

A.



Chilles, was one of the most valyaunt Capitaynes of the Greakes, against the Troy, Sonne of Peleus King of Thraece, & Thetis the Doughter of Chiro, by whō he was enstruced, in the scates of Armes. He was slayne by Paris, the Sonne of Priamus, and Hecuba, at Troy y Grete, in y Cēple of Apollo: into y whiche, he was come, during the truce betwene the Greakes, & Troians, vnder assuraunce, to marye Polirena the Doughter of Priam. In al partes of his body, he was wout daunger of wounding, sauing in the sole of y foote. By y which, his mother Thetis held him, whē she plonged him, for y same purpose, win Stir, one of thinfenal floodes. In y same part of his foote, not plōged, did Paris wouide him, whereof he died. And was buried in a litle hil called Sigeū, hard by Troy, wher, during the siege, the Greakes, encaped. In the warre betwene the Greakes, and the Troyans, he slew Hector, & Troilus, the Sons of Priamus, and Hecuba, & Bretherne of the said Paris. He was in heigthe (as Licophrōn wryteth,) viii. cubites.

Adolescēcie is the age betwene Childehood, and mans age: that is betwene. xiii. and .xxi. yeres. Seruitus y Gramariē, & Marro, hath deuided the Ages, into Infācie, Boyes age, Adolescēcie, Youth, & olde age, without any mencio of the perfect age of mans estate. The whiche, after the same diuisiōn, is conteyned betwene youthe, and olde age. Infācie endureth vnto .xiiii. yeres. Boyes age vnto .xiii. complete.

D o. y.

Buc

### The Table

But Serulus Tullius, a King of the Cornaynes, reckened all those which were vnder the age of. xvii. yeares to be Boyes, and after. xviii. yeres, vnyll. xlvi. to be yonge men , and them he called olde men , whyche were aboue. xlvi. yeres of age . Beyonde that is the age decrepit, vncertayne, and doubtfull.  
Aethiopelike on this worde Libye.

Alexander the grete, was the Sonne of Philipp, king of Macedonye, and Olympias. In his tender age, he was enstructed in learning. And after that, by þ space of. x. yeres, brought vp in Philosophie, vnder Aristotle, the most excellent Philosopher of all his time. After the death of hys Father, coueting to be Lord of all the worlde, he apparayled his Arme, against Darius the Ringe of Persia: who wþt hys predecessours, had bene the auncient enemyes of Grece . Hym dyd Alexander vanquishe in sundry batayles , and depþued of the Persian Kyngdome. But after he had obtained many notable victories, in the. xxx. yere of hys age, he dyed by poysion, at Babylõ, as Justin writteþ. Neuerthelesse , Plutarche affirmeth the contrary, sayenge that he died of an Ague, very vehement, wherin was no suspicion of Poysion. The Provinces , and Countreyes, by him Conquered, did Perdiccas, (vnto whome at his deathe withoute any more wordes, he delyuered hys Rynge) distribute amonges many Gouvernours: who altered their offices of gouernauice, into Royaulnes, and made them selues Kynges. And so was Thempye of Alexander broughte into manye Kyngedomes. The resydue of hys lyfe, ye maye rede in Plutarche, and Quintus Curtius,

Alexandrye, whereof Herodian speaketh in the thirde Booke, is a Citye of Siria, hard by a reffred of the Sea, called Sinus Ilicus, wherfore luke vþo thiese wordes, Ilicus Sinus. There is an other Ci-  
tye called Alexandrye, in the Region of Troas, where Trope the greate stede, as Plinie writteþ, in the. xxx. Chapiter of hys. b. Booke .

An

### of annotations.

Anonter Cypte, named Alerandrie, is in Egypte, sctuate vpon the Sea side , oueraneante the Isle Pharus, as sayth Plinie in the. xxi. Chapiter of the same boke. Thys Cypte is the principall of all Egypte , as London is of England. Into the whiche Ptolomeus the kyng of Egypte, desyred to be remitted by the Romanes, as it appeareth by many Epistles, of Cicero, vnto Lentulus , in the fyfte booke of hys familiar Epistles. Of thys Cypte, doth Herodian make mencyon in the. iii. booke of his Historie , and of the Tresor wrought agaynst the Citezins thereof, by Antonyne. There is another Cypte named Alexandrie, by the mountaynes of Casry, in the Realme of Sogdia, nigh vnto the Bactrians, whych hath on the South the mountaigne Cacausus. Another Alexadrie, buylded lykewyle by Alexander the great , standeth in the Region called Margiana, of a Kyuers name , whiche is Margus. The same hath on the West side Sirania, on the East the Bactrians, and on the South, the Realmes of Parthia, and Aria. Thys Citie was destroyed by ths Barbarous people , and in the same place was a new buylded, by Seleucus the Sonne of Antiochus, who named it Seleucia, as recordeth Plinie, in the xvi. Chapiter of his. vi. booke. Another citie called Alerandrie, in the Countreye of Carmania in Inde, boundyng vpon Persia. Of theise Cityes and countreyes loke Ptolomeus and Plinie.

Altinum luke thys worde Aquileia.

Amphitheater, is a place made to behold plaies in, the which is in fourme round, as yf it were buylded of. ii. Theaters , and therfoze is called Amphitheater.

A Theater is made halfe in compasse , betwene the ȝ. corners wherof, is played that whiche men behold, called of the Latinistes Scena. The nexte place vnto it, is called Orchestra, where the Senatours & Maȝe Ambassadours do sit . In the middes of the Theater, are the Seates for Knightes, and that place, is named Canea. Rounde aboue the Theater withinfurth are degrees, and steppes, so made, that the hygher they ascend, the longer, and larger they are. Upon the whiche

D. iii.

the

### The table

þ people do sit, as every man can get him place. Marc<sup>s</sup> Scaurus (as witnesseth Plinie in the. xxxiiii. boke, the xv. chap.) soz one Playe, which endured. xxx. dayes only, dyd buylde a Theater, the greatest of all other, that were euer made by mans handes. The Scene whereof, was of þre stages, & had. iii. C. l. Pyllers of marble of Affrique: of the whiche, the higher were of one piece, and xxxviii. fote in height. The lower parte of þ Scene was of Marble, and the stage in the myddes of Glasse, which never man heard of before. There was belydes, for þ more gorgious beautyfeng of it. iii. M. Images of Copper, with so much rychelle, Tapistrie of golde, and Tables of auncient & uocable pictures, þ it is almooste incredible to beleue, as wryteth Plinie. The greces wheron men late in the same, did receiuere. lxxx. persons. Caius Julius Cesar, syrft of all, buil ded an Amphitheater, in the fvelde called Campus Martius: whiche Augustus pulled downe, and in the same place, made a Tombe.

Antioche, is a partie of Siria, boundyng vpon the Royalmē of Cilicia, as sayeth Plinie, in the xii. chap. of hys synt boke. In thys part, is a Cytye of the same name, as wryteth Ptolomeus, in the fourth Table of Asya. Thys is the Cytye, to the whiche Antonyne went, and from thence, to Alexandrie in Egypt. Ther is another Antioche in the countrey of Assyria, where Alexander vanquished Darius: the whiche is next vnto Syrya (as witnesseth Plinie, in the. xiiij. chapyter of hys. vi. boke. Amonges the Isles of the Asyan Sea, Plinie in hys. v. booke, the . xxi. Chapyter, sayeth, there is one called Antioche, whiche standeth in the Sea of Panaphilia.

Apoplexie, as saveth Galien in the. v. chapyter of hys thyrd booke of the places affected, is a disease, by the whiche, all a mans synewes, and baynes, do lose theyz force, of sealynge, and mouynge. Thys dysease com meth sodenly, and by the same, a man shall vnethers fetches brethe.

Affrike

### of annotations.

Affrike. The Cosmographers do deuide þ Earth into þre partes. That is to wete, Europe, Asie, & Affrike. Europe is seperated from Asie, by the Riuere Tanais and the Lakes called Meotides, wythin þ whiche Tanais doeth fall. And it is deseuered from Asie, by the Sea Mediterrane, so named, for that it is in the myddes of the earthe, or elles, because it is enclosed wyth earth on every syde, sauynge where he hath his issue, betwene the pyllers of Hercules: wherof, the one is in Mauritania, the other in Spayne. Betwene the whiche, Hercules made waie, and passage for the Mediter rane Sea, to ioyne with Thocean. And it hathe none other issue, then betwene those two pyllers. It exten deth towardes the East, as farre as Siria, whiche is in Asie. Towardes the Northe, vnto the lakes Meotides. On the Southe parte, it hath alwaies Aphrique, whiche is sequestred from Asie, by an arm of þ Sea, called Sinus Arabicus. That is th: Redde Sea, wher by the chyldren of Israell, passed out of Egypte, into the Desernes of Arabie. Europe is muche Northe, and so is it West in respecte of Asie. And it is the least of the þre partes: conteynynge the Isles of England, and Scotlande, and the nerte Isles thervnto, Spaine, Fraunce, Almayne, Italye, & Grece, wyth the Isles, theyz neyghbours.

Asie conteyneth Asie the lesse, Lydia, Caria, Bythynia, Galatia, Capadoccia, Armenia, Cilicia, Darmatia, Assiria, Arabia, Persia, Hircania, Media, Judea, the two Pndes, and all the other countreyes, whiche Ptolome describeth in hys twelue Tables.

Aphrique which is South, conteyneth Mauritanya, Numidia, the countrey of Cartage (whiche so longe tyme, helde warre wyth the Romaynes) Libia, Ethiopia, and Egypt. The Sea, called the great Ocean, en virioueth all these þre partes rounnde aboue.

Aquileia is a Cytye scituare in þ tenth part of Italye, after the devision, whiche Plinie maketh thereof, in the xvij. Chapyter of the thyrd booke of hys natural Historye, sayinge thus,

Vere

## The Table

Here followeth certeyn region of Italie, named Venetie, adjacent vnto the Sea Hadriatyque. In this Region, there is a Riuere called Silix, commynge oute of the Taurisane mountaignes, a Towne called Altinum, with a Riuere called Iumentia, descendyng out of the mountaignes Opitergines, and a Hauen of the same name. A towne called Coccozia wyth a Riuere, & a Hauen named Romatinum. The greate and lytle Tauruentum. Anassum another towne, whereby passeth the Riuere Taurannus. And the Riuers Alsa, Patison, and Turrus, do passe by Aquileia, whiche Citie is distant from the Sea. viij. miles. For the rest, haue recourse to the Text.

Arabie. There are. iij. Arabies. Thone called fertile, or happy. Another called Rockye. And the thyrd, named Desert. All thre verye nygh together, as sayeth Ptolomee. And they are in Asia, nygh vnto the redde Sea, through the which the chydren of Israell depar-tyng oute of Egypte passed, and immediatly entered into the Desertes of Arabie.

Armenie is a Realme of Asia. The lesse Armenie sopeneth wyth Capadocia, on the Weste parte. And there is nothyng betweene them, sauyng the mountaignes. On the East part, it is ioyned with Armenie y great: hauyng no more, but the Riuere of Euphrates betwene them.

Towardes the Soute, is the mountayne Taurus: whych maketh separation of Armenia and Cilicia. Towards the North, is the Sea Mediterrane, which in the streyne there, is called Pontus Euxinus. The great Armenie is beyond Euphrates. And hath on the East part the Hircanian Sea, & the mountayne cal-LED Caspius. On the Northe abone it, the Realmes of Colchis, Iberie, and Albanie. And towards the South, Mesopotamia, as Ptolome hath described it, in y. liij. Table of Asia.

Asia. Looke on thy word Aphrique.

Armenians, are people of Arabic, as sayeth Plinius in the xxxij. chap. of the vi. booke of his natural historie.

15.

Bithinie

## of annotations

**B**ithinie is a Royalme of Asia, nigh vnto Thrace betwene whome, & it, ther is nothig, but a streite goulfe of the Sea. In this Royaulme, are many goodly Cities, as Chalcedon, Nicomedia, Apamea, Heraclea, Nicaea, & other, as sayen Plyn, & Ptolomee.

Bizantium, as it appeareth by the Text, in the beginning of Herodians thyrd Booke, is a Cytye of Thrace, of the whiche, the situacion, and commodities, are sufficienly described in the sayde Booke. It is the samme, which we at this day, call Constantinople.

C.

**C**apitol is a Hill in Rome, of whiche in olde tyme was called the Mounte of Tarpeius, wherin wher ther dygged, to lape the fundacion of Jupiters Temple which was there buylded fowre square on every syde a hundred foote in heigthe, in the tyme of Tarquinius the proude, laste Kyng of the Romaynes) ther founde a mans heade wthy the face hole bryperysched. The Latins call a head, Caput, whereof the place is calle Capitole. The Mounte called Tarpeius, had two lytle Hilles. On the one stode the Temple of Jupiter, & on the other, the Fortresse, or Palacie of Rome, whiche ther called Arx Capitolina.

Cappadoce is a Royaulme of Asie, adiacet on the west part to the Regio called Galatia. And on the East, to Armenia, thus dooth Ptolomee describe it in the first Table of Asye.

Carie. Looke on this worde Ionie.

Carre is a Citye of Mesopotamia, as sayeth the Text, which is renowned, & spokē of, through the overthrow of Marcus Crassus, who was slaine, & his Army vanquished by the Parthians, nigh vnto the said City, as writeh Plutarch in y life of Marcus Crassus.

Carting was an vnde & exercise, wherin voluptuous Emperours gretely delited. The forme thereof, was to ryde in a Chariot, & with whipping, cause the horses which drew the same, to run very fast to and fro as it liked the. We may call it Chariottig also: other name have I not for the laten worde of it, whiche is Kurigatio.

Ce j.

Chalcedon

## The Table

Chalcedon is a City of Bithynia, by the Sea side, righte ouer against Thrace, and the Cite of Constantynople. There is no more betwene them, as sappeth the Authoure, but a strait of the Sea, called Bosporus Thracius, or Propontius, or Echespontus, which are all one, makig seperation of Europe, & Asie,

Circenses were certaine exercisles, plaied, and shewed in a place called Circus, whiche was compassed rounde about with a stony wall. In thiese plaiers ther used to runne w<sup>t</sup> horses, & to w<sup>t</sup>astle. Thei were called Circenses, as it were circum enses, þ is to saye enuironned on euery syde w<sup>t</sup> Swords. For in olde tyme, al the Running, Jousting, W<sup>t</sup>assling, and Combates of the Romaynes were in places enclosed, on the one side with Riuers, & on the other syde with Swords, Glayus, and Hallebardes, to the ende that Cowardes, & Dastardes shuld not flee away wout daunger.

Cohorte Pretoriane, are suche men at Armes, as garde the person of any Capitayne, Duke, Consull, King, or Emperour. For this name Pretor, is ofte times taken for a King, Emperour, or Consull.

Colossus. The Latins called every great, and huge Image, Collosus. This Colossus, whereof Heroian speaketh in his firste Booke, was made by a notable workeman named Zenodorus, at the commandemt of Nero Emperour of Rome. And it was his Image, beyng a hundred and ten foste in heighth. The same Image was dedicated to the honour of the Sonne, after that the actes of Nero were condempned, and infringed for his cruell Tyranny, as saith Plynie in þ. xxxiiii. booke the vii. Chapiter. Ther was an other Colossus at Rome, which Domitian caused to be made, standing vpon great pillers of Marble.

In the Capitole there was an other Colossus, representinge the Image of Apollo, whiche was. xxxi. cubytes of height, trasported thither, by Marcus Lu<sup>c</sup>ius P<sup>o</sup>ntus. Amonges all such huge Images, Plynie,

## of annotations

In the lastested Booke, and Chapter, saith þ in Rhodes, there was the Image of the Dane, palles al other in greatness, made by Chares of Lidia, discouer unto Lissippus. The same was. ixx. cubites in heighth. And fell downe by a meruailouse erthquake. vii. yeres, after it was made. And althoughe it be broken, yet is it at this present, a thig wonderfull to behelde. The Chainbe therof, a man can bne the sadome. And hisingers are as bigge as great Images. In þame city of Rhodes, there are an. C. moze Colossi. But not so by gge as this, although the leste of them, were sufficient to win fame, and renawme to the City. For thole, & moze descriptions of the other, haue recourte to the aforesaid Booke, and Chapter of Plynies.

Constantynople. Look on this wordie Bizantium.

Cyrus, King of Persia, was the Sonne of one Cambyses, of an oblique familie in Persia, & Mandane the daughter of Astiages King of Media. Who after the position of his dreame (by the whiche he vnderstode þ his daughters Sonne shuld be King of all Asye, & that him self shuld lose his Royalmē) caused Cirus, immediatly after he was borne, to be put furth, & left alone in a Forest, to þ ende, he might be devoured of wyld beasts. But there a Witch gaue him sucke, & defendyd hym from Beastes, and Wyres, vntyll that the Bynges Sheperde founde hym, carped hym hōre to hys wyfe, and gaue her the charge to nouryshe hym. The woman was afterwardes called Spaeon, because amounges the Persians, a Dogge is so named. After that he ware great, he was called Cyrus, by the Sheperdes his Companions, knownen to be Astiages daughters Sonne, and sente into Persia: where he obtained much credite, and authority. Finally, he assembled an armee, to make warre vpon Astyages, his Grandefather, from whom he bereft þ Royalmē of Media, vnto the whiche the Persians were subiect. And by thys meanes Cyrus became Renge of Persie, and Media. Before hys tyme the Persians

## The Table

had no kinges, but were subiecte unto other Royaulmes. After his victorie against Astages, he vanquished, & toke prisoner, Croesus the King Lidia, which was so riche. But in conclusion him selfe, was ouercomen, and slayne, by Thomyris Quene of Scithia, when he had reigned. xxx. yeres. Unto hym succeeded Cambyses, his Sonne, as Justin, in his first booke mentioneth. Eusebius sayeth, that Cambyses reygned. viii. yeres. Under Cirus Bynge of Persia, by hys owne permisiō, begā the reparaciō of þe Tēple of Hierusalē: which notwithstanding was discontinued many yeres after. And at þ last finished the. vi. yere of Darius Reigne kinge likewise of Persia, as witnesseth the. vi. & vii. Chapiters of Cſd: as in the Bible, and Sabellique in the. vii. Booke of his seconde Enneade. After Cambyses, two Brethren called Magi, usurped þe kingdō. viii. Monethes. After whō Darius raigned. xxxvi. yeres. And in the seconde yere of his Reigne, Zorobabell, by his permisiō, renewed the reparacion of the Tēple of Hierusalē. This Darius, was nat he, þ Alerāder the great vanquished: but that was the. x. king after him, called Dari<sup>o</sup> also. In whom the Royaulme of Persia toke hys eande.

Cyzicum is a Citye of Asye, vpon the Sea syde, in a Royaulme called Milia the leste, as witnesseth Ptolomee in the fyfth Table of Asye. And so sayeth Plinie in the. xxxiii. Chapiter of his. vi. Booke.

## D.

**D**anubie, or Danowē. Loke on Iſter.  
Darius loke on these wordes, Alerāder, & Cſr<sup>o</sup>. Dionisius the Elder, was a Tirant of Sicile, & Son of Hermocrates, as saith Sabellique. He was verye well learned, as wriþteth Plinie: who preferreth none before him, sauig Plato in Philosophye, & Philopen<sup>o</sup> in Poetrie, two þ notableſt men of learning in all his time. In þ same yere þe Kingdō of Athenes ended, and Darius Bynge of Perse dyed, Dionisius loste his Royaulme, as sayeth Sabellique, in the nyntre Booke of hys fyfth Enneade. Wherin he agreeþ not with

## of annotations.

Wþþ Eusebius. Dyonisius Sonne was likewise named Dyonisius the yonger, who was also a Tirante of Sicile, and raygned in a citye called Siracusa: out of the whiche he was expulſed twylle, ones by Dion: And the ſecond tyme by Timoleon, ſent agaunt hym by the Corinthians. After thys ſeconde expulſion, he kept a ſchol, and taught yonge chylđren at Corinth, as wþþteth Valerius Marimus.

## E.

**E**ridanus is a Riuere of Italye, otherwyſe called Padus, whych cometh (as layth Plinie in þ. xvi. chap. the. iij. booke of his natural History) out of a mountaigne called Vesulus. After that, he hideth him ſelfe in the grounde, and iſtreteth out againe in the conſynes of the Foruibienſea. Of all Riuers ther is none moxe renowned. The Grekes cal it Eridanus. There is no Riuere besydes, that encreaſeth greater, wþthin ſo lytle ſpace. For it hache a merueyloſe abundance of water, falling into þe Sea Adriatique. Betwene the ctyes of Ravenna, and Altinum, it is verye damageable unto the Countray. For by the ſpace of. vi. Shore myles (as ſayeth Plinie) it doeth ſeparate it ſelfe, into many Riuers, & Lakes. And because that euery Riuuer is large, and great, they call the ſame ſeven Seas, as witnesseth Herodyan, in hys eyght booke.

Euphrates. Loke on thys wordē Syzye.

Europe. Loke on thys wordē Aphryque.

## G.

**G**alatians, are thole whiche enhabit the realme of Galatia, which is in Asye, betwene Bithinia & Capadocia, as ſayen Plinie in the laſte chap. of hys fyfth booke, and Ptolomee in þe fyfth Table of Asye. The ſame Realme is caſtled alſo Gallogretia, and the people Gallogreci; because, that when the Gaules came

### The Table

to the ayde, and succour of the kyng of Wythynse, they helde and possessed that part of the Ropalme. Wherefore it is so named, as wryteth Sabellique.

Gallus a Ryuer. Looke on theyle wordes Goddesse Desynuntynne.

Ganimedes was Son of Tros king of Phrigia, who had Iulus, Iulus, Alaccus, and Ganimedes. The fables surmisse (which is the most common opinion) saye Jupiter rauished Ganimedes for his beauty, by an Eagle. But Sabellique in the x. boke of hys syrte Enneade, sayth, he Ganimedes the Son of Tros, was rauished by Tantalus kyng of Paphlagonie, to abuse hym. Wherby there arose great warre, betwene the two kynges. And it is most lyke, that being very yonge, he was iniuriously rauished by Tantalus, vnder y signe of the Eagle, were the battayles fought vpon the land, or Sea. Which hath bene cause of the inuentio of the Fable, that saiyth that the Eagle, by ordynaunce of Jupiter, rauished hym.

Gaule or Fraunce. Cesar in his commentaries saith, that Gaule is deuided into thre partes, wherof y Belges helde the one, the Celtes another, and the Aquitans inhabited the thyrd. The Aquitans are seperated from the Celtes, by the Ryuer of Garumna. The Celtes are sequestred from the Belges, by the Ryuers of Marne and Sern. And the Belges are sundred from the Almaignes by the Rhevn. In the whiche diuision, Gaule Parbonique is not comprised. Ptolomie in hys fourth Table of Europe, and in the chappyters of the same, dothe deuyde Gaule into fourte partes: apoyntinge Gaule Aquitanique, to extende as farre as the Ryuer of Loyer. And from Loyer, to the Ryuers of Sern, and Marne, is Gaule named Lugdunensis. And from Sern, vnto Rhevn, Gaule Parbonique extendeth it selfe, vnto the Sea Mediterranean, beyonde the Alpes, and the Ryuer Garus, vnto the Pyrenyan Mountaignes. Gaule the rounded,

or otherwyse

of annotations.

or otherwyse called Lumberdye, is in the Lympetes of Italpe, and is the same countreye, whyche is named Liguria, herte vnto the Alpes, and the Sea. All the other Gaule, or Fraunce, is called Gaule bering bushe. Gaule Parbonique, was before tyme named Brachata, as sayeth Plinie, in the thyrd boke, and the fourth chapyter.

Goddesse Desynuntynne, is y same that Cicero in hys booke of the lawes, calleth the Moother Idea, whyche is the selfe same, that the Romaynes name the Moother of the Goddes, and doo greatlye reverence.

Liuie in the . ix. booke of hys seconde warre Punicque, sayth that they founde in the Sybyline booke, (whyche were perused and redde ouer, because of the often raynyng of stones the same yeaire) that when so euer anye straunger, and forreyne enemye, shoulde moue warre agaynstte Italpe, he myghte be vanquished, and expelled thence, yf the Moother Idea were transporeted to Rome, from a syelde of Phrigia named Pelinus. The whyche to do, the Romaynes sent fiftie Ambassadours, wylle syue greate shypes, called Cynquerenes, to Atalus king of Asie. Who led them to the place called Desynus, deluyered them the holye Stone, whiche the inhabitanites there, called y Moother of the Goddes, and appoynted theym to carye it vnto Rome. It was receyued at the Hauen of Roma, by Publius Scipio, beyng lugged at that tyme, the worthiess manne in all the Cypte, to do the same, caried vnto Rome, and sette in the Temple of Victo-rye, wytin the Palayce, the . riij. daye of Aprill, whyche was celebratyd, and solempnyzed wylle festes, and gyestes, that the people in greate abundance offered vnto the Goddesse. Whiche playes the Romaynes called Megalesia.

The same Goddesse is called Ops, whome they suppose to be wyfe of Saturne, called Rhea, by the whyche they understande the earth, that geueth affluence and abundance of all thyng.

Six

### The Table

She is otherwile named Cybele, of the name of a Hyl and cyrpe, of Phrigia where her sacryfices were fyrt instituted. & she is called Cybele, of Cimbals, which signifeth the Instrumentes, and Sounedes, they vsed in the sacryfices. The Poetes laven, that she roade in a Chariot, and had a crown of Towers: wherby they syg iysye, that the eartre hangeth in the ayre, and the wold tourneth alwayes rounde aboue and that the earth hath vpon it Cytyes, and Towres, wherein be Towers.

She is called Moother of the Godes, because she engendreth all thyng. She is also called Pales, for she is þ Goddess of sheperdes, & her feastes are called Palilia. And she is also surnamed Berecinthia, of a mytaygne of Phrigie called Berecynthes. Accordyng to the diuersytie of her names, she hath dyuers powers, dyuers sacryfices, and dyuers ministers.

Under theys names, Cybele, Berecynthia, Goddess Pelynuntyne, & Moother Ide, because they came of names of places in Phrigia, from whence thys Goddess was broughte to Rome, is no diuersitie of puylance sygnified.

Thys Goddess hathe Priestes, and Ministers, called Galli, by the name of a Riuier, named Gallus in Phrigia. The water wherof, causeth them to be mad that drinke it. Those Priestes be gelded, who beyng stured wyth madnesse, noddyng theiur heades, vp and downe, wthy great noyse of small Belles, whych they carped, did prophelye, and tell of thynges to come, in that madnesse. They were otherwyle called Corabantes.

### I.

Lilium is the same Cytye, that we call Troye the great. Iulus son of Tros, in þ countrey called Troas byd buylde thys ritye Iliu, so called of his name. And of the countrey wherin it stode, it was named Troye, as wytnesseth Sabellique, in the fyfth booke of hys fyft Enneade. The Countrey is loynynge vnto Phri-

of annotations.

gia on the East, and towardes the West it hath the Sea Hellespontique, as Ptolomee hathe described it, in hys first Table of Asie.

Illiria. The Royalmie of Illiria, described by Ptolomee in his. v. Table of Europe, hath on þ North Coste, þ. ii. Pannones: on þ west, þ country callid Istria. Towards the East, it hath þ high Misia. And towards þ South, a part of Macedonia. This Royalmie is also named Liburnia, & þ part whiche extendeth towards þ high Misia, is calld Dalmatia. At this preset, the Illiria Regio is called Scлавonia. Loke Ptolome in þ said. v. table of Europe. India. There are. ii. Indes, both in Asia, & toyning togithers, wherof thone maketh an ende of Asie, towards thorke, & is called Inde, beponde the Riuier of Ganges. On this side the Riuier, is Inde, called Inde on this side Ganges, which hath on the East syde, the same Riuier. On the West, the Royalmies of Paropanisades Arachosia, & Gedrosia. On þ North, þ mountaine Imaus. And on the Southe the Indian Sea, as sayeth Ptolomee in the fyfth Chapiter of the. x. Table of Asye.

Jocasta was þ wife of Laius King of Thebes. After whose deceasse, she maried her owne Sonne Dedipus, bware. And had by him. ii. childre, Etheocles, & Polinices: who fought togithers, after Dedipus death, for the Royalmie of Thebes. And in þ same cobate, both þ Wetherne slew one an other, as saith Sabellique, in þ. viij. Booke of his fyft Enneade. For this cause, did þ Aleradiens, in iugement, call Antonines Mother Jocastat because Antonyne, for to obtayne Thempsye alone, had slayne hys Brother Geta, as the. ii. Sons of Jocasta, slew one an other, for the Royalmie of Thebes.

Ionic. Ilyne in the. v. Booke, the. xxix. Chap. sayeth, that the Countrey of Lydia, watered ouer wthy the Riuier of Meander, very crooked, and full of tourninges, both extende aboue Ionic: having on þ East syde Phrigia, on the North Misia, and on the Southe Caria.

The which Countrey of Lydia, was before called Mene. By þ descriptiō, þ Ptolomee maketh in þ firſte Table of Asie, Ionic is þ self same Regio, þ is called Lydie, or Mene. At the leſt wile, it is a parte therof: bordering f. l. j. upon

## The Table

Upon the Sea, whiche for that cause is called Ionian. The same Ionian Sea, dothe extende fro the Bankes of Ionia, vnto the bankes of thysle of Sicile. Plinie in the iiiij. booke, the. xi. Chap. sayeth, that the Grecches deuyded the Ionian Sea, into the Sea of Sicile, and the Sea of Crete, so called, bicause of the nigh Isles. Ptolomee in the v. booke, the seconde Capiter, sayeth, that the Regio propprelye called Asia, hath on the North syde Bithinia. On the West, a part of Proponitis, the Sea Helleponique, the Sea Icaria, i the Sea Hyptioique. On y East, the Regids of Licia, Pamphilia, & Galatia. And on the South, the Sea of the Rhodes. In this Region, are espredd. Lidia, & Caria, & other small Koyalmes. In Lidia is Ionia, as it is before saied. And Iouie is ryght ouer aneant an Isle, called Icarie: whereof, the Sea therre, is named Icaria. And it is the same, which is calld Ionian. Caria is betwene Lidia, & the Sea of y Rhodes. On the West it hath the Sea Icarian, or Hyptioique. And on y East is Licia, ioyned to Pamphilia. Cilicus Sinus, is a resserion, & bendinge of the Sea, which hath on the West, thysle of Cipres. And on the East, Siria, ioynd vnto the Bankes of Siria. And on the Northe syde, is the Countrey of Cilicia. In y plaine by the same tourning of the Sea, is the Citye of Alexandria, buldeed by Alexander y grete, in memorie of y battayl by him wonne, against Darius King of Persia. In this place also, was the battayl betwene Scerus, & Piger. Ister is a great, and meruaylouse Rauer, otherwyse called Danubis, or Danow, comming oute of a mountayne of Almayne, named Arnoba. Beyonde the Alpes, it passeth by Iunumerable Countreis. The further it ranneh, the more it increaseth, retaining the name of Danow, vntyll it commeth by the Countrey of Illiria, nowe called Sclavanie, where he chaungeþ hys name, and is called Ister. And receyuinge hys increase, of. Ir. Riuers, which fall into hym, he departeth from y earth, and entreth into the Sea Pontique, by. vi. grete armes, as sayeth Plynpe, in the. iiiij. booke, the. xi. Chapiter, of his Historie naturall.

L.

Lodicea

of annotations.

Lodicea, is a Cypte of Siria, nigh vnto the Sea, and not very farre distant from Antioche: whyche is also in Siria, but further from the Sea, as myt-  
nesseth Ptolomee, in the. iiiij. Table of Asye.

Latium, is a parte of Italye, in the whyche standen Rome, Tusculum, Praeneste, Ardea, Tibur, and many other Cities, as writeth Ptolomee, in the syxte Chapi-  
ter, of the syrte Table of Europe. Those that enhabyte this parte of Italy, are by the Romaynes called Latini.

Laurenum is a Cypte of Italyc, in the same parte that is called Latium, nigh vnto Hostia. By Lauren-  
tum, there is a forest, sacred vnto the Sonne, as sayeth  
Plynpe, in the. v. Chapiter of his thyrd booke.

Liber Pater, in Englyshe Free father, is the selfe same God, that we call Apollo, as saith Macrobius, in his Saturnales, after Aristotle, for diuerse causes: and amonges other, bicause that in Thrace, there is a Temple, and Oratory, dedicated vnto Liber: wherin answeres, and Prophesyes are rendered. But in the same Temple, those whyche oughte to Prophecie, do drinke Wyne excessively, as they whyche render oracles in the Cypte of Clarium, after thei haue dronke muche wa-  
ter. The Lacedemoniens, in the sacryfyses whyche they made to Apollo, ware Garlandes of Iunc, as yf they dyd sacrifice to Bacchus. The Boetians, assyrmyngs that the Hell Parnassus was sacred vnto Apollo, dyd alwayes there kepe the Oracle of Del-  
phus, and the Caues of Bacchus, ordinated vnto the same O. D. D. For thys cause, in that Hell, were the sa-  
crafyses made vnto Apollo, and Liber Pater.

In thys Hell also, where the Bacchana-  
les celebratz, ones in two yeare: whyche shewed, that Apollo, Lyber, and Bacchus, were but one O. D. D.  
And he was called Lyber, that is to saye Frea,  
bycause the Sonne, whyche we call Apollo, doth  
trealy,

F. f. g.

## The Table

frealy, and without subiection, tourne, & compasse the woylde: beyng sometimes highe, and sometymes lowe, and kepyng his course dierente wayes.

**L**ybie is a Region of Aphrique: And it is expedient to know, that there are. ii. Libies. For Ptolomee in the. vi. Chapitre of his. iii. Table of Aphrique, setteth one Lybie, soyned with Egypce, & the Marmarike Region. And saith y Egypce, & the Marmarike Region, haue on the West part, the Ryalme of Cirenia: folowyng the continuation of one Lyne, whiche draweth by a Citys called Darins, that standeth vpon the Egyptian Sea. And in the. vi. Chap. of the. iii. Table of Aphrique, he setteth an other Lybie, called Lybe the Inner, whiche hath on the North, the seconde Mauritane, Aphrique y lesse, & the Cirenayake Region. On the East, a parte of the Marmarike Region, & Ethiopia, whiche is vnder Egypce. Towardes the South, it hath Ethiopia y Inner. And towardes y west, it hath y west Sea. For more descriptiō hereof. looke Ptolomee i y forsaid Chap. & tables.

**L**ydie is a Countrie of Asia, vpon the Egean Sea, betwene Phrygia, & Caria. This Countrey hath. ii. Riner of great fame. The one of them, is on the Northe coste, & called Pactolus, wherin are founde many baynes of Golde. And thother is in the South syde, & called Meander, which is very crooked, & bēding in & oute. Looke Ptolomee, in the syrie Table of Asye.

## P.

**M**auritanie. Ptolomee in his first Table of Affrike appointeth. ii. Mauritanies. Thone whereof, is more West, right ouer aneant Spaine Betique, and called Mauritania Triganica. Thother beinge more nere Thorient, is named Mauritania Cesariensis, and on the East parte soyned vnto Numidia.

**M**edes, be the people of the Ryalme called Media. Ptolomee in his. vi. booke, the secōde Chap. sayeth that this Regiō hath on y North cost, a part of the Hircanīa Sea. On the West, y grete Armenie, and Alcie. On the

of anno tations.

On the Easte Hircanie, & Parthic. And towardes the Southe, it hath the region called Corinthena. Thus is this regiō described in the. vi. table of Asie. Plinie in the vi. booke, the. xvii. chap. sayeth that Marcus Agrippa sayd, y Media, Parthia, & the countrey of Perse, had en the East the riuere Indus. On the West the riuere Cygris. On the Northe Taurus, & Cacaus. And on the South the redde Sea.

**M**edia. Looke on the wende Medes.

Mesopotamie, is a royalme of Asie, betwene the riuers of Euphrates, & Tigris, as sayth Plinie, in y. xi. chap. of the. vi. booke. And in the. vi. booke, the. xviii. chap. he sayeth, that all the countrey of Mesopotamie was subiect vnto the Affricans. Looke more en thyd woynde Syrys. Misien. The hygh Misie, as Ptolomee hath described it, in the ninth table of Europe, is boydng vpō Thracie on the East part. On the South vnto a lytle Ryalme named Dardania, which is aboue Macedonia. And on North vnto the Riuere of Danowe. The lowe Misie is nygh vnto y falling of Danowe, in the sea called Pontus Euxinus. Looke on this woynde Propontys. The Misien are those, which inhabit these. ii. regions. Plinie in the. xvi. chap. the thyd booke, called these royalmes Misia. Ther are. ii. other in Asie, after the description that Ptolomee maketh in the syrie Table of Asie. Thone called Misia the moxe, & thother Misia the lessie: both ioyning to Phrygia, vpō the Hellespontian Sea.

P.

**N**icaea is a cytē of Bithynie, as sayen Ptolomee, and Plinie.

**N**icomedie is a Cytē nygh vnto the Sea, in the Ryalme of Bithynie.

Numidia is a countrey in Affrike, betwene Mauritanie, & the countrey of Carthage, after the descriptiō of Ptolomee, in the. vi. table of Affrike. Thys countrey was very much renowned, through the vertue of Massinissa whs was king sometyme therof. Thinhabitantes are called Numidians, or Nomades, because y often tymes they chaunge theyr habitations, & carry theyr housholdes fro one place to another in wagōs, as saith Plinie in y. viii. thyd

## The table

Thyrd chap.the.v. boke of hys naturall Histoyre, & Sa-  
bellique in the syrff boke of hys. v. Cimade. D.

**O**rgia be sacrifices, made aswell unto the Moothor  
of the Goddes, as unto Bacchus, & other Goddes,  
by the prystes called Galli, that are madde.  
Ocean is the great Sea, that enuironeth al y earthe,  
and ioyneth hym self w the Mediterrane Sea, betwens  
the pyllers of Hercules. Thone wherof is in Maurita-  
nia, & called Abilla. And other in Spayne named Cal-  
pe. The Mediterranean Sea, is enclosed w earth on every  
syde: that is to say, on the right side wyth Aſſyrie, and  
on the lefte syde, wyth Europe and Asie. P.

**P**annone. Ptolomee in y. v. table of Europe, doth  
descriue it. Pannonies, ioyning one to another.  
Thone of thē called the high Pannone, boudeth  
on the West, vpo a royalme of olde time called Noricū,  
& at this present Bauiers. Other called y low Pan-  
none, nigh ioyninge unto the higher, stretcheth to the  
ryuer of Danow. Of y which riuere, declining towards  
the South, that part which receaueth the riuere Saus,  
doth eand the lower Pannone on the East. And on the  
South, drawynge towardes y Hadriatique Sea, are the  
realmes of Illiria, or Sclaunie, & Dalmatic. In these  
regions, there be. ii. ryuers, Drauus, & Saus. Drauus,  
which is the more swyft, cometh out of the countrey of  
Bauiers. And Saus which runneth more slowly, out  
of y Alpes Carnicyan, as saith Plinie, in the thyrd boke  
the. xxv. chap. of hys naturall Histoyre.

**C**Panthers are beastes very cruel, as hēcūncisō of the  
word doth sufficienly shew: which signifieth all cruel.  
The skinnes of these beastes are spotted ouer, w rounde  
white spots. And there is no beast so notably spottēd, as  
y Panther, & y Tigre. These Panthers do lassur woder-  
ful swete. And for their lassure, other beastes, resorte  
unto thē. But yet they are afard of y Panther sferce  
toke. Wherfore y Panther hideth his head, & suffreth al  
y rest of his bodie to be loked on, y he mai the better take  
his pray of the other beastes being amased. There is no  
great difference betweene y Panther, & the Leopard, sa-  
wyng y the Panther is moxe white. And Plinie in hys  
vii.

of annotations.

vii. boke, the. xvi. chap. sayth that he coulde never fynde  
other difference. In the same chap. he telleth a meruay-  
lous tale of a Panther, which remyd the godd turne  
that a man had before done unto him. In Syrie, and in  
Aſſyrie there be many of these beastes.

**P**archians. The royalme of Parthia, as Ptolomee  
descriebeth it, in his. v. Table of Asie, stretcheth on the  
North unto Hircanie, & to y mountaignes betwene thē.  
On y South it hath Carmanie. On y East the Ariene.  
On y West the Medes. And this regis is enuironed w  
hills on al partes. So saith Plinie, in the. vi. boke p. xv.  
chap. Who saith also, y the Parthias haue. viiiij. kyng-  
domis. And their Provinces are betwene the red sea, on  
y South, & the Hircanīa sea on y North. xi. of the be be-  
yond Armenia, & the mountaignes called Caspij, & do ex-  
tend along by the Caspian sea, unto the Deichians: dra-  
wing towards y sea. And these realmes be called y high  
realmes. Other y low realmes. The Parthias, whiche  
are not in y firste description, are called Nomades.

**G**Patroclus the friend of Achyllez, was in the warres

betwene the Grekes, & the Troyans, & there slayne by  
Hector: the sonne of Priamus kyng of Troy.  
**G**Perinthiens are a people of Thrace, wherin stādeth  
a citie called Perinthus, whi ch ther is a forteſſe  
called Bizia, ſome time beloſing to y kings of Thrace.  
In this royalme, there are no Swalowes, for y offence  
of Tereus kyng of Thrace, as saith Plinie, in y. vi. cap.  
the. iiiij. boke of his naturall hilſoy. Chosſeſe was this.  
His wife named Progne, y king of Athenes daughter,  
had a ſiſter which hight Philomela: whom he greatly  
desired to ſee. And Tereus to please her wile, promyſed  
to ſetthe her ſiſter. In bringing of her, he defraudeſe her.  
And to y end, ſhe ſhuld not diſclose it to any perſon, he cut  
out her ſoge, ſhot her vp in a ſecret place, & told Progne  
y she died by y way. But Philomela wrote y blode in a  
kerchieſe all the matter, & ſent it unto Progne her ſiſter.  
Wha being chaufed w ire for y ſame, ſlew a little childe  
called Itis, which ſhe had by Tereus, & preſented it him  
to eat. Tereus perceiving y matter, purſued her. And  
ſhe ſleing away was turned into a Swallowe, Tereus  
him ſelfe into a Lapwinge, and Itis into a fefauante.

### The table

Pesynus. Looke on these wordes Goddesse Pesinutine. Phari. Pharus is an Isle in the sea of Egypt, wherein standeth a cytēe buylded by Alexander the great, ouer aneant Alexandria, which was lykewyse buylded by the same Alexander. The Isle Pharus is so nyghe vnto Egypt & Alexandria, that at thys day, there is no more betwene the, but a bridge to passe fro thone to other, as sayth Plinte, in the. xi. chap. of hys thyrde boke. In the cytēe of Pharus, Ptolomeus Philadelphus the kyng, made a meruavlous hygh Tower, whiche is numbred amonget the meruaples of the world: vpon the whiche there is alwayes a great burnyng light, to shew the haun vnto them that saile by night on the Seas. And because that thys lyght is so renowned, many doo call all other Towers, whiche haue fyre and lyght in the after that sort, Phari, as our present Author doth him selfe. Iherenices. Looke on thys woyde Syrpe.

Wrigie is a countrey of Asie, whiche boundeth on the Cest vpon the countrey of Troye y great. And as sayth Plinte, in the. vi. boke, the. xxxii. chap. Thys countrey is iwynnge to Galatia on the Northe. On the Southe it hath Lyceonic, Pylidie, and Mygdonie. And on y East it toucheth the countrey of Capvadoce. Ptolome describeth thys countrey in the syxt Table of Asie, and dothe not alot bnto it so great a compasse.

Pitanie is as muche to saye, as Laconique, or Lacedemonien: because Pytanias was the father of Thrasybulus the Lacedemonien, whs was slayne in syghting valiauntlye in the warre. After hys decease, Pytanias shewed hym selfe very graue, and prudent, saying that it was a rare thyng to dye so well. Wherefore he wylled hys countrey men, not to wepe for hys death, because he dyed valiauntlye as it became a Lacedemonian. So sayth Ausonius the Poete in an Epigrame. Ther was another Thrasybulus of Athenes, whiche had a boyce very loude, and brugge, of whome Plutarque speaketh in the lyfe of Alcibiades.

Pontus. Looke on thys worde Propontis.

Proconsull. In the tyme that Posthumus Albus, and Apurius Fullius, were Consulles, and warre was made

### ¶ anno facions

made agaist the people called Equi dwelinge in Italy, which warre was unfortunat to the Romaines, Titus Quintas, was syrk created Proconsul, to goo and ayde one of the Consulles, whiche was besieged: to the ende, that the other Consull myghte remayne at Rome, & leuy moore me. And this Proconsull, had. vi. Sergeats geeng before him, with mases. His owne oxnametes were like unto the Consulles. Fr̄s that tyme forwardes, it was ordeneid, that those which had bene Consulles one yere, shuld the next yere foloweng be Proconsulles, for to ge into the Provinces. And every of them had hys Liuenant, whiche was called Legatus, to assisse him in hys affaires. The Proconsull had iurisdiction onely in the Province givuen vnto him, but that was nat voluntary, as to infranchise a bondeman. The syrk day of Januari yere, did y Romaines chose two Consulles, which during thole yere folowing, had as muche authoritee, as Emperour. And because thei coulde not be in all places, when neade required, thei sent their Proconsulles into the Provinces, which had there as greate authoritee, as if y Consulles had bene present. This word Proconsull also sygnifyseth hym, whiche is in steade of the Consull, and dothe that, that the Consull shoulde doo, as sayeth Senestella, and Pamponius Letus, of the Ro mayne Magistrates.

¶ Prodigouse tokes, were signes, whiche ofte tmes hap pened naturally. Neuerthelesse thei betokened one mishap, or other. Wherefore some do saye y prodigious is deruyed of that whiche oughte to be feared, as the shge of the Harpie called Celeno, whereof Argile speketh. Such are the singinge of a Rauen, & the meetinge of a weasel, when a ma goeth forth of his house. Thise, and suche other lyke, did men in olde tyme, accepte monstroule, and signifring some calamytie to ensue.

¶ Propontis is a part of the Mediterane Sea, whiche is deuided into diverse partes. For Pontus is a parte of the same Sea, & Propontis is a parte of Pontus. Plinte in the. iii. boke. p. 13. Chapter, saith y the firsste parte of the Sea, which is betwene Thrace, & Asie, (where Tercras made a Brdge to passe ouer his Army) is called Helles

Eg. j. pontus

## The Table.

pontus. And that is, a small armie of þ Sea, very strayne. After þ it is somewhat brode, & then retourneth into a narowe strayne again. This Sea, þ is the broder parte, is called Propontis, and the streite is named Bosporus Thracius: beyng in bredthe. v. paces onely. Over thys streite, Darius king of Persie, & father of Xerxes, passed his armie vpon a sydge. In exceding further towards the North, beynde Bosporus Thracius, the Sea doth enlarge him selfe wonderfully, & is calld Pontus Cimmerius. And after þ it retourneth to a strait again, & is calld Bosporus Cimmerius, whiche is thissue of one of the Lakes Meotides, þ is the last part of þ Mediterranean Sea, towardes the Norþe. All thiese Seas aboue speſed, are partes of the Sea Pontus.

Ptolomeus, after he had expellid Antigonus þ Sone of Demetrius, helde the Royallme of Macedonie, as sateth Sabbelique, in the. viii. booke of his. iiiij. Emeade. He sayned him selfe to be amozouse of hys owne Sister Arsinor, and that he desyred to haue her to wyse. But when she had condescended to the same, he shewd apparauntly, after his receite into the City of Cassandria, that his purpose was, to bereue his syster of the Citye, and to slea the chyldyn that she hadde by Lysymachus her fyfte husbande: whome he slewe in their Mothers armes. At the lasse, he was vanquished by the Gaules, vnder the leading of Welgivus theyr Capitaine, take prisoner, and beheaded, and his heade pitched vpon a poll, to feare the Macedones withall.

¶ Pyrrhichius is a foote, or measure, composed of two shorte sillables, so calld, by the name of Pyrrhus, king of the Royallme called Cyprus, whiche is nyghe vnto Thessalie, and beneath Macedonie. For that by him was inuented a kynde of daunsynge, called Pyrrhichius, as sayeth Plinie in, the. vi. Chap. of the. vi. Booke. The which leaping, or daunsing, was by mouyng, and meaſure of two shorte syllables, wherof Herodian in hys fourthe Booke, maketh mencion.

R.

Ehenus. Looke on this woordc. The Rheyne.

S.

Sarmates

of annotations.

Sarmates are the people, and inhabitautes of the Regions, Sarmatiques. Plinie, and Ptolome saye, en there are two Sarmaties, one in Europe, an other in Asie. And bothe nyghe vnto the Riuere Tanais whynch diuideth Europe, and Asye, and nyghe vnto the Lakes Meotides, whereinto Tanais doþe fall. Ptolomee in the . v. Chapiter of hys. iiiij. Booke sayeth, that Sarmatia of Europe, excedeth towards þ North, as farre as the great Ocean, whiche in that part is calld the Sarmatique Ocean. Towards the West, vnto the Riuere named Tisula. Towards the South, vnto the mountaynes Sarmatiques, whiche make separaciō of Sarmatia, and the countrey of Dace, and the lower Mysie. Towards the East, vnto a streite plot of peart, named Isthm⁹ of þ Lake, or Riuere, Bicis. And it hath on the one syde, the lakes Meotides, and the Riuere of Tanais. And in the. v. Booke, the. ix. Chapiter Ptolome saith that Sarmatia which is in Asie, hath on the Norþe, a Lande vñknowē. On the West it hath Sarmatia of Europe, vnto the heade, and the Riuere selfe of Tanais. On the East the Lakes Meotides, vnto the streite of the Sea, called Cimmerius. On the South, it hath a parte of the Mediterranean Sea, called Curius Pontus, whiche is verye nygh vnto þ Lakes Meotides, and it streceth from thence, vnto the Riuere Corar. And from the Riuere Corar, aboue the Regions of Colchis, Iberie, & Albanie, vnto þ Hircanien Sea, whiche is otherwyse named the Caspian Sea. And on the East it hath a parte of the same Hircanien Sea, and the Riuere of Kha, vntyll that it entreth into Sarmatia, where Sarmatia streceth vnto the Scithians. Plinie, in the. iiiij. booke the. vii. Chapiter sayeth that the Greces doþe call them Sarmates, that we name Sarmates, and that the name of Scithians, passeth vnto the Sarmates, and is the Almyynes.

Saturnales were seastes, and sacrifices of Saturne instituted, and ordained sytyle by Janus, to the honour of Saturne, who taughte hym to till the earthe. And after Saturnes decease, he vedyated an aultare, and sacrifices vnto hym, whiche are called Saturnales.

C. i).

The

. The Table

The anciest fathars did solempnize thiese feastes on se  
day only in the yere, that is to weete, in December, the  
viiij. Calendes of Januari. But after y Ceasar had ad-  
ded. viij. dayes more vnto that moneth, the feastes were  
celebrated, the. xxvi. Calendes of Januari. Which cau-  
sed, that the common people, beyng ignoraunt of these  
daies, did celebrate the feastes many tymes in the yere.  
Many Anthours do affirme, that in olde tyme, the Pas-  
turales endured. viij. dayes, during the which feastes,  
the Seruauntes, & Bonemen, had as grete auochoris  
as their Paisters, and had lycence, to doo what lyked  
them selues beste. So saith Maerobins, in the firste  
Booke, the. vi. Chap. of hys Saturnales.

¶ Peculer playes were celebratzed ones in thre ages,  
whiche was thze hundred yeres.

**S**eptentrion. It is certayne, as sayth Aulus Gel-  
lius in the seconde Booke, the. xxiij. Chapiter of his At-  
tique nyghtes, that the heauen hathe fourre Regions.  
That is to saye the Oriente, Occidente, Meridionall,  
and Septentriō. The Meridionall, or South, & Septen-  
trion, or Northe, are always remayning in their own  
places. And the Northe, is in that place of the Heauen,  
which is ryght opposite to the South, whiche is in the  
middles betwene the Oriente, and the Occident where  
the Sonne never cometh. The Orient is very variable.  
For in the Somer the Sonne ryseth in that place, from  
whence commeth the wynde Eize, whiche is some-  
what towardes the Northe. In the myddle, or meane  
dayes, the Sonne ryseth where the wynde Curus is,  
And in the shordest daies, it ryseth towards the South,  
in the same part, y the wind called Vulturnus, or other  
wyse Curonotus is. And as there are. iii. risiges, eue so  
are there thre settinges, or descendinges, likewise men-  
tioned, and thre windes cumming fro the same thre set-  
tinges. That is to weete Caurus, named by y Greekes  
Argestes, blowing righte against the wynde Eize.  
Fauonius, or Zephirus, against Curus. And Aces-  
cus, named by the Greekes Libs; against Vulturnus.

The

of annotations.

The wynde which cometh fro the South, because y the  
South chaungeth not, is one, & in Latin called Auster, in  
Greeke Notas, because it is moyste. The Northe parte,  
by like reason, hath one onely wynde, which bloweth a-  
gainst Auster. This name Septentrion, as saith Au-  
lus Cellius, in the Chapiter last cited, commeth of that,  
that. viij. starres doo make a signe in the heauen in forme  
of a wayne, & ore yoked to labour, or elles because the  
iii. next starres, that a man may se, in the Northe, nigh  
one vnto an other, do make as it were a triangle, and  
thys sygne is ryght opposite vnto the Southe.

**S**irmium is a Cypte of the lower Pannoneie to-  
wardes the hygh Nylfe, drawinge to the East. It is be-  
yonde y Kyuer of Danewe, as saith Ptolomee in the.  
xvi. Chap. of his thyrd booke Plynie, in the. xxv. chap. of  
his thyrd booke, saith y a Riuier called Vacuntius ente-  
red into y Kyuer, Iaus, rygh vnto the City Sirmiu.

**S**yrie, as Ptolomee describeth it in the. iiii. Table  
of Asye is seperated from Armenie on the Northe, by  
the mountaigne Taurus. On the South is Arabie: on y  
West stretchyng towardes y Isle of Cypre, is y Sea of  
Sirie, which is now called y Sea of Phoenicia. And on  
the East is Mesopotamie, Plynie in y. v. booke the. vii.  
Chapiter sayth that Syrie was the greatest of all the  
Provinces, & therfore had y name of al Revalme, whiche  
wer subiect vnto it. For towards Arabie it was called Ju-  
dea, or Iury Palestine. Phoenice: a more inwardre Da-  
mascene. In stretchig towards y South, it is called Ba-  
bilone. And betwene y Riuers of Tigris, & Euphrates,  
it is named Mesopotamie. Beyond y Mountain Taur, it  
is called Sophene, where Euphrates is deuided into. ii.  
partes. And beyond Armenie it is called Assyrie. On y  
part where it boundeth vpō Cilicia, it is called Antioche.  
The part of Syria, which lyeth along the sea coast, are  
the countreyes of Idumea, & Judea. And in stretchinge  
more hygher towardes the Northe, is the countrey of  
Phoenice. And after it is more neare Euphrates, it is cal-  
led Sirie, as saith Plynie, in deuiding Sirie more equi-  
tably. All the Sea which is rygh thys part, is called the  
Phenician Sea. The people of Phoenicia, hathe bene  
Eg. iii. meruay-

The table

meruaylouye renowned, for that they were the syng  
Inuentors of letters, of Astrologic, & of making shypes,  
and all engens of warre.

T.

**T**aurus is a Mountaygne in Asie, meruaylouse  
huge, & great, as sayeth Plinie, in the. xv. chap.  
the. v. boke, of hys natural historye. For he laith,  
that hys begynnyng is vpon the bancke of the Orien-  
tal Sea, and passeth from thence by many peoples, and  
Countreyss: makynge separation betwene them. At his  
begynnyng, which is at the Indian Sea, he hath on the  
ryght syde the North, and on the leste syde the South,  
stretchyng towards to þ West, by the middes of Asie,  
saynnge where he encontraþteth the Sea. After that, he  
vendeth towardes the North, and fetcheth a great com-  
passe, on thone syde. Then he stretcheth towardes the  
Phoenician Sea. On thoþer side, towards þ Pontian  
Sea, and on another parte, to the Hircanian Sea. And  
he goeth verye nygh unto the Lake Mæotide. And after  
he hathe verye muche bowed, and tourned hym selfe, he  
in the North. And all the way as he passeth, he hath di-  
named Imaus, after that, Paropanisus, Circius, Cha-  
byghest, he is called Cacanus, which is aboue þ royal-  
ches of Colchis, Iberie, & Albani. And where he stree-  
teth out hys armes, as yf he woulde embrase the Sea,  
he is named Harped, Cozacesius, & Cragus. Wher he  
hath portes for separation, and passage, albeit the same  
be trenched, & naturally opened, yet is it all one Mount-  
aygne. Those portes are called in one place Armeni-  
en, which is Armenie. In another parte they are called  
betwene Armenie the great, & the Medes. And they are  
in another place called the Portes of Cylpeye. And al-  
so in Greke called by one name, the mountaygne Ceran-  
sus. Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afore alledged.  
Thus sayeth Plinie, in the place afore alledged.

of annotations.

doeth appoynte the lymytes, and boundes of the Ro-  
mayne Empyre.

**C**Theater. Looke on thy word Amphitheater.

**C**The Aegean sea, parte of the Mediterraue sea, is be-  
twene Asie, & Macedonie, and is called Aegean, because  
that in the same Sea are manye Iles, so nygh one ano-  
ther, that a farre of, they seeme to be Coates, which the  
Grekes call Egas, or because that Aegea Queen  
of the Amazones was therein drowned, or elles for that  
Aegaeus the father of Theseus, threwe hym selfe head-  
longe into it, as sayth Heritus Pompeius.

**C**The Ionian sea. Looke on thy word Ionie.

**C**The Rhein. Cesar in hys commentarpes sayth, that  
Gaule Belgique extendeth on the East, vnto the Rhein.  
And beyonde it, are the Almargnes, and thereby the  
Rhein doeth deuyte Gaule Belgique, from the Al-  
margnes. In Gaule Belgique are compyssed the cou-  
tryss of Lorrayne, Luxemborg, Guelders, & Flau-  
nders. Thys Ryuer commeth out of the Alpes, and fal-  
leth into the Sea of Flaunderes. Before his entry into  
the Sea, he maketh an Isle, whiche is the countrey of  
Hollande, nyghe vnto the whiche, is the countrey of  
Guelders, bendyng towardes the head of the same Ry-  
uer. Beyonde it is Luxemborg, and Lorrayne, whiche  
is seperated from Luxemborg, by þ River of Meuse  
whiche corneth out of þ mountaygne Vogelus, and fal-  
leth into the Rhein. Out of the same mountaygne com-  
meth the Meuse, whiche runneth lykewyse into the  
Flemyngha sea. Betwene the Meuse, and the Ryuer of  
Somme towardes the Sea, is the countrey of Flau-  
nders, whiche is seperated from Fraunce, by the sayde  
Ryuer of Somme, as it is apparauntlye described, and  
figured, in the newe Table adioyned vnto the Tables  
of Ptolomee.

**C**The men at armes Pretorian. Looke on these wordes  
Cohorte Pretorian.

**C**The seuen Seas. Looke on thy words  
Eridanus.

**C**The Tygre. Looke on thy word Tygris.

**C**The Tichhenian Sea, is þ low Sea, which excedeth  
alonge

### The table

alonge by Italie nigh vnto the coste of Hoscse. And is so called by the name of Tyrhenus, sonne of Arys, and brother of Lidus, kyng of Lydie, who came into Italy; and with his people inhabited that part of Italy, which is vpon the lowe sea, whereby the Region is also called Tyrhenie. After, it was called Tuscie, and Hetrurie, as sayeth Sabellique.

Thrace is Ryalme of Europe, in the furthest part thereof, towardes the Orient. The which Realme, hath on the North the lower Misie. On the West the higher Misie, and a part of Macedonie. On the East, the sea named Propontis, and the strete of the sea called Bosporus Thracius, whiche maketh separation betwene Europe, and Asie, as sayth Ptolomee in the xi. chapter of the nyng Table of Europe.

A Tribune is as much to saye, as Maister, Gouernour, or Capitayne. And it commeth of this word Tribus, soz that the people of Rome, was syrl deuyded into partes, which they called Tribus. And the chiese Gouernours and Capitaines of the men at armes, elected out of those partes, were called Tribuni, as saith Marro treatinges of the Latyn tonge saith. Gegecius in the. iij. booke, & the vii. chap. of the feates of warre. A Tribune of men at armes, had the charge of a band in an armie, wherin were as many horsmenas sole men. As of the syrl Cohort of a Legion: which Cohorte, was the greatest, the princpal, and the best fylled wth sage, discret, valyaunt, and experte warryous. In the same were. ii. C. sole men, and. C. xxxii. men at armes on horsebacke.

The Captayne of thys Cohorte, was called the Tribune of the men at armes: who had vnder hym other Captaynes, and Centurions, as well of fotemen, as of horsmen. The other Cohortes of a Legion, whyche were nyne, lesse then the syrl, were conducted eyther by the Trybunes, or by the Provolles. Budens in hys comenclarpe vpon the Pandectes, o; Digestes, sayeth that we maye call a Trybune of men at armes, a Marshall. Gegecius in the seconde booke, the twelueyth chapter, sayeth, that the honour of the Trybune of men at armes, was when the men at armes were honestly, and cleanly

### of annotacions

cleanelye apparelled, well armed, and theyr harness wel foun byshed, and shynyng bryghte, and when they were well instructed, & exercised in the feates of warre. The auctoritye and power of thys Magistrate, was soz whyle so greate, that the Trybunes of the men at armes, had ones the gouernance, and administration, of the Romayne common wealth. And there was no Magistrate, or Dignytye more hygher then thys. When there were no Consulles, whyche was aboute thre score and ten yeres, after the kynges were expellid out of Rome, the Common weale was ruled fwe yeares by the Trybunes. After the fyue yeares were expellid, Consulles were agayne created, as sayth Pompeius Letus. Dyuers tymes the Trybunes were remorded vnto dignytye agayne, as sayth Titus Livius, and they had the auctoritye of the Consulles.

Syrlle they were thre, then four, then tenne, and then twentye, some tyme lesse, some tyme more. In Rome ther e were other Trybunes, whiche were named Trybunes of the people, who were created the yeare, that Auius Virginius, & Titus Metellus Geminus, were Consulles, whyche was the. xvi. yeare after the expulsion of y kinges. At which time the common people, being ouercharged, and vered wth debtes ( after that the Senatours and noble men of Rome, had often tymes promysed to release, and discharge theym thereof, and then decepued theym ) seperated them selues from the Senatours. But Menenius Agrippa, one of the tenne Ambassadours sente vnto the people, whyche were assembled in ths field, reduced them by an oracio into amitye, created y Trybunes of y people, who were cholen out of the common people them selues. This dignite was sacred, & inviolable, not subiect vnto the Consulles, as other officers were. The Tribunes of the people sat in the Senate house, at the very entry ther e. And that, that the Consulles decreed, thei sometyme allowed, and sometime reected. And bicause thei upheld, and mayntained the people, and styrred them oftentimes against the Senatours, and noble men of Rome, ther e rase many Ciuyple batayles betwene them. In the

Vh. tyme

## The Table

yme of the Kinges, there were Tribunes whiche were Captaines of a hundred horsemen, and were called Tribuni Celorum. Ther were also other Tribunes which had the Charge of the Recet, & Custody, of all Trybute money, and were called Tribuni Aerarii, as muche to save, as the Tribunes of the Tresoure.

**T**igris is a Riuier, which hath his beginnyng in the Royalmē of Armenie the great. At the first he runneth slowly, and where he beginneth to be swifte, he is called Tigris, for so do the Medes call an Arowe. He falleth in to a Lake, called Arthusa, but yet it medleth nat w<sup>t</sup> the come togithers. But the Riuier passeth throughte, cleane vnylike the Lake, either in course, or colour. At his mesing w<sup>t</sup> the Mountaine Taurus, he hydeth hym selfe w<sup>t</sup>in the earth, and runneth vnder the Mountayne, & then appeareth agayne on the other syde. The place is called Zoroanda. And that it is the same Riuier, whiche hydde hym selfe in the gronde, it doth manifestly apeare. For when he commeth furth agayne, he bringeth any thing with hym, that was cast into hym, on the other syde the Hull. He passeth afterwardes, by an other Lake named Thesbidis, and then hideth him self in the earth again. After his next comming furthe, he is deuided into two partes, wherof thone runneth into Euphrates, and so into the Persian Sea. This Riuier maketh manye tornynges, and resseyvons, and separateth Mesopotamia fro Assirie. Looke Plinie, the. vi. Boke, the. xvii. Chap. **T**yrrus is a Cytie of Phoenice, vpon the same Sea, that Laodicea is. All the same Sea, is attributed vnto the Phoenicians, as it is sayd in this word Syrie.

¶.

**V**esta is a Goddess, which was daughter of Saturne, vnto whō the Virgines vestalles were consecrated. Numa Pompilius did firste institute in Rome those Virgins, neuertheles the same Kelygi on was so auncient, that it came from the Troyans, to the Albaynes, and from them to the Romaynes.

Theys

of annotations.

Theyz office, & profession, was to make sacrifice for the Romayne people, vnto þ Goddess Vesta. And to garde the eternall & inextinguible fyre. Ther were. i. Goddesses of thys name Vesta. The one was. Moether of Saturne, by the which we understand the earth. Therother was daughter of Saturne, which is she, that their name the Vixgyn, by whome we understande the fyre, as sayth Duide. Understande nethunge by Vesta sayth he) but the lively, & burning fyre, wherof thou seest no hody to be engendred. She is therfore accepted a Virgin, because she doth not engender. The Romaines sent as far as Phrigia, for the Image of this Goddess Vesta, the which was brought, & set in þ Temple of Ticiope, which is in the Palacie, vnto whō thole vrgyns were sacred, that had theyz house herte by the Temple. And were. xx. in numbre. Aulus Cellius in the. xij. chap. the fyfth boke of his Attique nightes sayeth, þ the high Bishop tolke that Vixgyn whiche shold be sacred, by the hand, called her Amata (because the fyfth vrgyn, instituted by Numa Pompilius, was so named) and did set her into þ College of the Vestale vrgyns: where, from thence forward, she was wout emancipation, exempte from her fathers rule, & had power to make her Testament. Bf ye wil know, of what age, of wt at parentes, & of what stature, w<sup>t</sup> the qualitie of her person, and vnder what wordes, the highe Bishoppe dyd admitt a Vestale Vixgyn into the order, Looke Aulus Cellius, in the sayde Booke and Chapyter.

¶ The ende of the Annotations.

**C**Imprynted at London, in Fleet Strete, by Willlyam Coplande, at the Sygne of the Rose Garande.

**C**um gratia et pruilegio regali ad sumendum solum.

# C Faultes escaped in the Pryntinge.

Fol.	Pagina.	Linea.	Errata.	Reade.
ii.	i.	xxxij.	Marternus.	Paternus.
vij.	ii.	rrrbij.	facyon	facyon.
vij.	ij.	In the Margent,	dexteritee	agylytee.
Ivij.	i.	rbi.	Vnto Counsayll,	Counsell vnto.
ixij.	i.	i.	dismay you not,	dysmay you.
Ixxij.	ij.	e.	repusyng,	repulsyng.
6.	i.	i.	sylence,	dyd sylence,
			attentisely,	attentysely.

